

# Czech

by

Laura A. Janda

and

Charles E. Townsend



## Table of Contents

<b>0. Socio- and geolinguistic situation</b> .....	1
0.1 Location and number of speakers.....	1
0.2 Relation of Czech to other languages .....	1
0.3 Dialectology .....	1
0.4 Diglossia.....	4
<b>1. Phonology</b> .....	5
1.1 Phonemes and alphabet.....	5
Alphabet.....	5
Vowels.....	6
The liquids <i>r</i> and <i>l</i> .....	7
Consonants .....	7
1.2 Phonological rules.....	8
Stress .....	8
Glottal stop.....	9
Voicing phenomena .....	10
Consonant clusters.....	10
Vowel epenthesis.....	11
Phonology of Colloquial Czech .....	11
<b>2. Morphology</b> .....	13
2.1 Inflectional morphology.....	13
2.1.0 Morphophonemic alternations in inflection.....	13
Vowel-zero alternations .....	13
Qualitative vowel alternations .....	13
Quantitative vowel alternations .....	13
Type 1 (“half-softening”) consonant alternations.....	14
Type 2 (“full-softening”) consonant alternations.....	14
Isolated and suppletive types.....	15
2.1.1 Noun morphology.....	15
2.1.1.1 Masculine paradigms .....	15
Hard stems .....	15
Inanimate: <i>rozbor</i> ‘analysis’ .....	15
Animate: <i>bratr</i> ‘brother’ .....	15
Animacy .....	16
Soft stems .....	17
Inanimate: <i>koš</i> ‘basket’ .....	17
Animate: <i>malíř</i> ‘painter’ .....	17
Stems alternating between hard and soft .....	17
<i>kotel</i> ‘cauldron’ .....	17
Special types .....	17
- <i>a</i> virile: <i>přednosta</i> ‘chief, head’ .....	18
- <i>e</i> virile: <i>zachráníce</i> ‘savior’ .....	18
2.1.1.2 Neuter paradigms.....	18
Hard stems .....	19
<i>město</i> ‘city’ .....	19

Soft stems .....	19
Special types .....	19
-ět-/at- type: <i>slůně</i> ‘baby elephant’ .....	19
-í type: <i>nábřeží</i> ‘waterfont’ .....	20
2.1.1.3 Feminine paradigms .....	20
Hard stems .....	20
<i>žena</i> ‘woman’ .....	20
Soft stems .....	21
<i>růže</i> ‘rose’ .....	21
Feminine nouns ending in a consonant .....	21
Nsg in zero, -e/ě type: <i>dlaň</i> ‘palm of hand’ .....	21
Nsg in zero, -i type: <i>kost</i> ‘bone’ .....	21
2.1.1.4 Nouns of variable or indeterminate gender .....	22
2.1.2 Adjectival morphology .....	22
2.1.2.1 Long form adjectives .....	22
Hard stems .....	23
<i>druhý</i> ‘second; other’ .....	23
Soft stems .....	23
<i>první</i> ‘first’ .....	23
2.1.2.2 Short form adjectives and possessive adjectives .....	23
Short form adjectives .....	23
<i>nemocný</i> ‘ill’ .....	23
Possessive adjectives .....	23
<i>bratřív</i> ‘brother’s’ .....	24
2.1.2.3 Comparatives and superlatives .....	24
Comparative adjectives .....	24
Superlative adjectives .....	25
2.1.2.4 Deadjectival adverbs .....	25
Adverbs formed from adjectives .....	25
Comparative adverbs .....	25
Superlative adverbs .....	26
2.1.3 Pronominal morphology .....	26
Personal, reflexive, and interrogative pronouns .....	26
First person .....	26
Second person .....	26
Third person .....	27
Reflexive pronoun .....	27
Interrogative pronouns: <i>kdo</i> ‘who’ and <i>co</i> ‘what’ .....	27
Possessive pronouns .....	27
<i>můj</i> ‘my’ ( <i>tvůj</i> ‘thy, your’ has the same endings) .....	28
<i>náš</i> ‘our’ ( <i>váš</i> ‘your’ has the same declension) .....	28
Demonstrative pronoun .....	29
<i>ten</i> ‘this, that, the’ .....	29
Relative and other pronouns .....	29
<i>sám</i> ‘oneself’ .....	29
<i>vechen</i> ‘all’ .....	29
2.1.4 Numeral morphology .....	30
Cardinal numerals .....	31
<i>jeden</i> ‘one’ .....	31

<i>dva</i> ‘two’ .....	31
<i>tři</i> ‘three’ and <i>čtyři</i> ‘four’ .....	31
Ordinal numerals.....	32
Indefinite numerals .....	32
Other numerals .....	32
2.1.5 Verbal morphology .....	33
2.1.5.1 Conjugation classes.....	34
TYPE I - SUFFIXED with 1sg <i>-ám</i> .....	35
TYPE II - SUFFIXED with 1sg <i>-ím</i> .....	35
TYPE III - SUFFIXED with 1sg <i>-u/-i</i> .....	35
TYPE III - NONSUFFIXED with 1sg <i>-u/-i</i> .....	35
Irregular verbs: .....	36
Imperative formation.....	37
Gerunds and active participles.....	37
2.1.5.2 Negation.....	37
2.1.5.3 Aspectual derivation.....	38
Formation of perfectives .....	38
Formation of imperfectives .....	38
2.1.5.4 Motion verbs.....	39
2.1.6 Uninflected parts of speech.....	40
2.2 Derivational morphology .....	42
2.2.1 Derivational morphology of nouns, adjectives, and verbs.....	43
2.2.1.1 Prefixes for nouns, adjectives, and verbs.....	43
2.2.1.2 Derivation of nouns .....	46
Derivation of nouns from nouns, adjectives, and verbs .....	46
Suffixes and Endings for Masculine Nouns .....	47
Suffixes and Endings for Neuter Nouns.....	49
Suffixes and Endings for Feminine Nouns.....	51
Derivation of nouns from adverbs, prepositional phrases, and numerals.....	54
Derivation of nouns via compounding.....	55
Derivation of diminutive and augmentative nouns .....	56
2.2.1.3 Derivation of adjectives.....	57
Derivation of diminutive, augmentative, and attenuative adjectives.....	58
Derivation of possessive adjectives.....	58
Derivation of compound adjectives.....	58
2.2.1.4 Derivation of adverbs and pronouns.....	58
2.2.1.5 Derivation of verbs .....	59
Verbs derived with the reflexives <i>se</i> and <i>si</i> .....	59
Factitives in <i>-it</i> .....	60
“Becoming” and “being” verbs in <i>-at</i> , <i>-it</i> , <i>-ěť</i> , <i>-nout</i> .....	60
Diminutive verbs.....	61
Foreign borrowings and neologisms with <i>-ovat</i> .....	61
2.3 Morphology of Colloquial Czech.....	61
2.3.1 Inflection of nouns.....	61
2.3.2 Inflection of adjectives and adverbs .....	62
<i>druhej</i> ‘second; other’ .....	62
2.3.4 Inflection of pronouns.....	63
2.3.5 Inflection of numerals .....	63
2.3.6 Inflection of verbs.....	63

<b>3 Syntax</b> .....	65
3.1 Syntax of noun phrases.....	65
3.1.1 The nominative case.....	65
3.1.1.1 Naming functions.....	65
3.1.1.2 The subject of a clause.....	65
3.1.1.3 The predicate of copula sentences.....	66
3.1.1.4 Comparison and apposition.....	66
3.1.2 The genitive case.....	66
3.1.2.1 “Source” meanings involving ‘from’.....	66
3.1.2.2 “Goal” meanings involving ‘to’.....	67
Verbs that Require the Genitive.....	67
Verbs that Can Govern the Genitive or the Accusative.....	68
3.1.2.3 “Whole” meanings involving ‘of’, possession, and category membership.....	68
3.1.2.4 “Reference” meanings involving ‘at’ with dates and other reference points.....	69
3.1.3 The dative case.....	69
3.1.3.1 “Experiencer” meanings involving ‘to’ and ‘for’.....	70
Synonyms and Near-Synonyms of ‘give’.....	70
Synonyms and Near-Synonyms of ‘take’.....	71
Words Meaning ‘give self to’.....	72
Words Meaning ‘take self from’.....	72
Words Expressing the Giving of Messages, Money, Gifts.....	73
Verbs Expressing Benefit.....	73
Verbs Expressing Harm.....	74
3.1.3.2 “Competitor” meanings involving ‘against’ and ‘to’.....	75
Words Expressing Matched Forces.....	75
Words Expressing Inclination, Submission.....	76
Words Expressing Domination.....	76
3.1.4 The accusative case.....	76
3.1.4.1 “Destination” meanings involving ‘to, for’ and the direct object.....	77
3.1.4.2 “Dimension” meanings involving ‘through, during’.....	78
3.1.5 The vocative case.....	79
3.1.6 The locative case and “place” meanings involving ‘in, on, at’.....	79
3.1.7 The instrumental case.....	80
3.1.7.1 “Means” meanings involving ‘through, by’.....	81
3.1.7.2 “Label” meanings involving ‘like, as’.....	82
3.1.7.3 “Accompaniment” meanings involving ‘with’.....	82
3.1.7.4 “Proximal landmark” meanings involving ‘before, behind, above, under, between’.....	83
3.2 Numeral syntax.....	84
3.2.1 The syntax of cardinal numerals.....	84
3.2.2 The syntax of telling time.....	85
3.3 Intraclausal syntax.....	86
3.3.1 Word order in declarative clauses.....	86
3.3.2 Negative clauses.....	86
3.3.3 Interrogative clauses.....	87
3.3.4 Commands, requests, and hopes.....	87
3.3.5 Passives, reflexives, reciprocals, intensives, and causatives.....	88
3.4 Interclausal syntax.....	89

3.4.1 Coordination .....	89
3.4.2 Subordination.....	89
3.4.3 Relative clauses.....	91
3.5 Syntax of Colloquial Czech.....	92
<b>4 Texts</b> .....	95
Literary Czech Text.....	95
Colloquial Czech Text.....	100
<b>Abbreviations</b> .....	105
<b>Bibliography</b> .....	105

## 0. Socio- and geolinguistic situation

### 0.1 Location and number of speakers

Czech is the official language of the Czech Republic, which is bordered by Austria, Germany, Poland, and Slovakia (see map in 0.3). In 1996 the population of the Czech Republic numbered over 10.3 million, and there are significant emigre populations abroad, particularly in the USA, Canada, and Australia. The Czech Republic began its independent existence in 1993 when its separation from Slovakia broke up the former Czechoslovakia.

### 0.2 Relation of Czech to other languages

Genetically, Czech is a West Slavic language (West Slavic includes Czech, Slovak, Sorbian, and Polish; East Slavic includes Russian, Belarusian, and Ukrainian; South Slavic includes Slovene, Macedonian, Bulgarian, and the language traditionally known as Serbo-Croatian). The people of Moravia were the first Slavs to achieve literacy in their own tongue when, in 862, two Byzantine missionaries, St. Cyril and St. Methodius, arrived to baptize them and translate for them liturgical texts into what we now know as Old Church Slav(on)ic, a South Slavic language comprehensible to all Slavs at the time. The saints' mission was short-lived and Moravia, increasingly under Frankish control and the jurisdiction of the Pope of Rome, soon established the use of Latin and the Latin alphabet. The introduction of diacritical marks to make the Latin alphabet more versatile (*s* and *sh* could now be distinguished by *s* versus *š*), is associated with the early 15th century theologian Jan Hus. In 1526, the crowning of Ferdinand I as King of Bohemia marked the beginning of the control of the Czech lands by the Habsburg dynasty, and the pressure to enforce the use of German at the expense of Czech mounted over the following century until, after the defeat at White Mountain in 1620, the Czech language went into a period of two hundred years of decline and disuse. Not until the National Revival beginning in the early 19th century did Czech begin to reassert itself as a literary and official language.

The long period of domination by German-speaking authorities, during which Czech was eclipsed from the public arena, and the fact that much more than half of the perimeter of the nation borders on German-speaking lands, resulted in a pronounced German influence on Czech which, though particularly apparent in slang and colloquial lexicon and also manifest in calques and syntactic loan-translations, has also had a pronounced influence on the language's grammar and syntax.

Czech's closest genetic relative is Slovak, and until the 18th century Czech served as the literary language for both nations. Since 1918, up until the "Velvet Divorce" of 1993, Czech and Slovak were fairly equally represented in the Czechoslovak media, so that Czechs and Slovaks could acquire at least a passive knowledge of each other's languages. Still, Slovak was certainly influenced more by Czech than Czech by Slovak, though the former did adopt a few words from the latter's lexicon.

Between 1948 and 1989 the political dominance of the Soviet Union and years of compulsory Russian classes in Czech schools brought Russian words into Czech despite considerable resistance to this influence. At the present time, though, English is by far the largest source of borrowings into Czech.

### 0.3 Dialectology

As will be noted from the map, most of the peripheral zones of the Czech Republic belong to no specific dialect group. These border areas (the so-called Sudeten lands; gray areas on map) were formerly inhabited by German speakers ousted at the end of World War II and then resettled by Czech speakers from various other parts of the country. Although there are many other features in the dialectal differentiation, the two largest dialect groups can be classified according to their



differing treatment of certain etymologically long vowels (length is indicated by acute accent mark) as Bohemian (the central and western dialects upon which the standard language is based) and Hanák Moravian (the eastern dialects). Both dialect groups have raised original long mid vowels, but whereas Hanák Moravian has also lowered original long high vowels, Bohemian has diphthongized these vowels:

Bohemian:

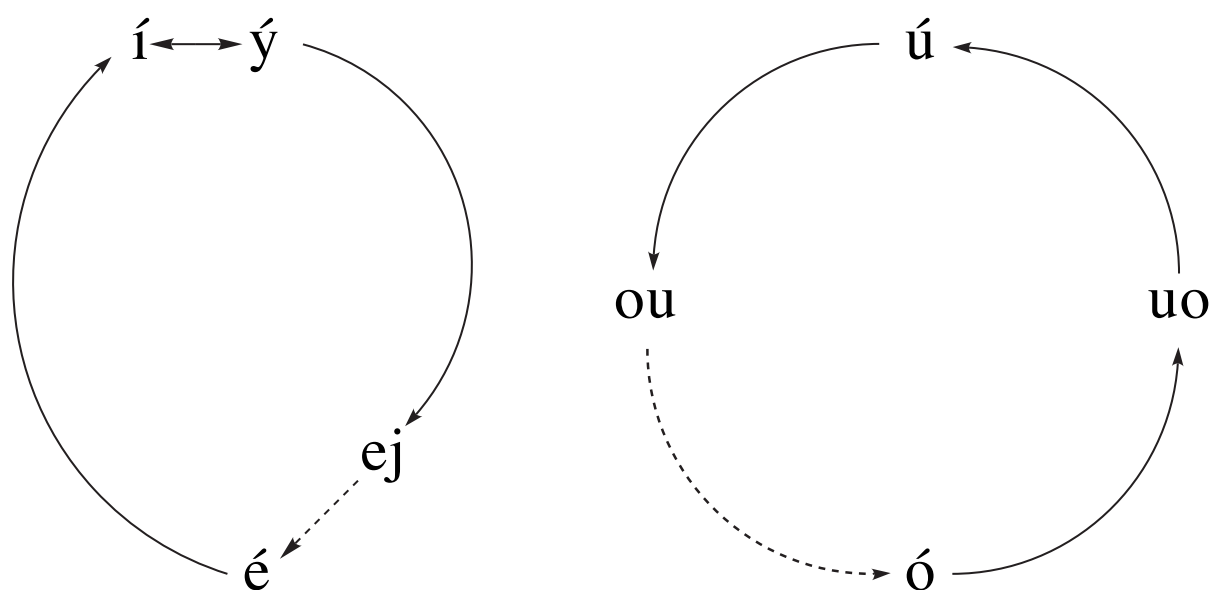
ý > ej  
 é > ý/í  
 ú > ou  
 ó > ú

vs.

Hanák Moravian:

ý > é  
 é > ý/í  
 ú > ó  
 ó > ú

These two dialects can be seen as two stages in the development of high and mid vowels, where the Moravian dialects show the more “complete” evolution:

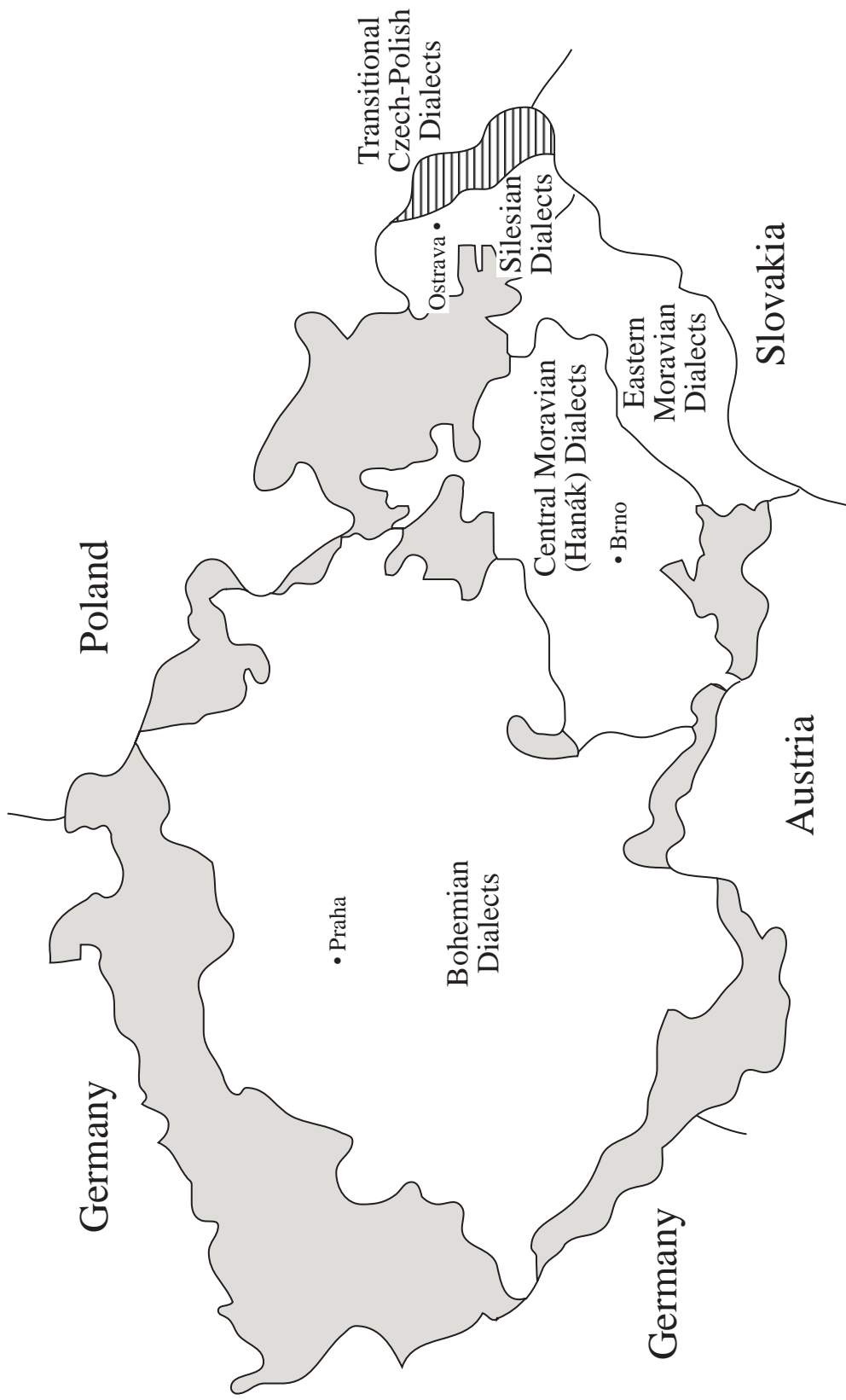


á

Diphthongizations in Czech

(dotted lines indicate changes completed in Hanák dialects)

The Lachian Silesian and mixed Polish-Czech dialects of the northeast serve as a transition to Polish, characterized as they are by loss of vowel length, penultimate stress and consonantism similar to Polish. The Moravian-Slovak dialects of the southeast serve as a transition to Slovak, characterized by retention of *ú* and of back vowels after palatal consonants.



#### 0.4 Diglossia

After the protracted domination of Czech by German in the 17th-18th centuries, Czechs went back to their *Kralice* bible of the 16th century as a model for constructing their modern literary language in the 19th century. Vernacular Czech had, of course, continued to evolve in the intervening two centuries, and there is, hence, a pronounced gap between the spoken and literary languages in all aspects of the language: phonology, morphology, syntax, and lexicon. In comparison with the vowel shifts experienced in the Bohemian dialects, for example, only  $ó > ú(\ddot{u})$  has been fully realized in the literary language;  $ú > ou$  is almost entirely restricted to non-initial positions,  $é > ý/í$  is not realized in most phonological and morphological environments, and  $ý > ej$  is entirely absent. Recent orthographic manuals have suggested acceptance of certain phonological and morphological colloquial features in written texts, and a number of previously “samizdat” dictionaries of slang and colloquialisms have been published addressing lexical issues, but the gap between the two codes remains considerable. This grammar of Czech will focus primarily on Literary Czech (LCz), but will note some of the most important deviations common in Colloquial Czech (CCz).

# 1. Phonology

## 1.1 Phonemes and alphabet

### Alphabet

The following table compares the forty-two Latin graphemes in the Czech alphabet with the IPA symbols that designate their sounds:

a	[a]	g	[g]	o	[o]	u	[u]
á	[a:]	h	[h]	ó	[o:]	ú	[u:]
b	[b]	ch	[x]	p	[p]	ů	[u:]
c	[ts]	i	[i]	qu	[k],[kv]	v	[v]
č	[tʃ]	í	[i:]	r	[r]	w	[v]
d	[d]	j	[j]	ř	[rʒ]	x	[ks]
d', ě, d	[ʃ]	k	[k]	s	[s]	y	[i]
e	[e]	l	[l]	š	[ʃ]	ý	[i:]
é	[e:]	m	[m]	t	[t]	z	[z]
ě	[e]	n	[n]	t', ě, t	[c]	ž	[ʒ]
f	[f]	ň, n	[ɲ]				

When length is present in foreign words it is not consistently indicated in the orthography, especially when it involves [o:] and [u:]: *telefon* [telefɔn]/[telefɔn] ‘telephone’, *kultura* [kʊltʊra]/[kʊltʊra] ‘culture’.

The graphemes *i*, *í* and *y*, *ý* both represent /t, i:/, the result of a historic merger of two once-distinct phonemes; these letters do, however, serve as diacritics for the consonant graphemes *t*, *d*, and *n*. Sequences of *ti*, *di*, *ni* indicate /cɪ /, /ɟɪ /, /ɲɪ /, in which the corresponding palatal replaces the dental, and this is true for syllables with long vowels as well. When *y* follows these consonant graphemes, the expected dentals are pronounced. Compare the following examples:

<i>ty</i>	[tɪ]	‘you’ N	<i>ti</i>	[cɪ]	‘you’ D
<i>dýl</i>	[di:l]	‘longer’ CCz	<i>díl</i>	[ɟi:l]	‘part’
<i>pány</i>	[pa:mɪ]	‘men’ Apl	<i>páni</i>	[pa:ɲɪ]	‘men’ Npl

When *i* appears after *t*, *d*, and *n* in foreign words, the shift to palatals does not take place: *direktor* [direktor] ‘director’. In combination with other consonant letters *i* vs. *y* does not indicate any phonological distinctions:

<i>pyl</i>	[pɪl]	‘pollen’	<i>pil</i>	[pɪl]	‘he drank’
<i>sýrový</i>	[si:rovi:]	‘cheese’ adj.	<i>sírový</i>	[si:rovi:]	‘sulphur’ adj.
<i>bílý</i>	[bi:li:]	‘white’ Nsgmasc	<i>bílí</i>	[bi:li:]	‘white’ Nplanim

The vowel letters *i* and *í* are not spelled after *h*, *ch*, *k*, and *r*; and *y* and *ý* are not spelled after *c*, *č*, *j*, *ř*, *š*, and *ž*.

The grapheme *ě* serves a similar diacritic purpose, but it is restricted only to short syllables, and in addition to signalling the substitution of a palatal for a dental, after the labial graphemes it signals the insertion of [j] (after *b*, *p*, *v*, and *f*) and [ɲ] (after *m*). Compare the following uses of *e* and *ě*:

<i>tele</i>	[tele]	‘calf’	<i>těle</i>	[cele]	‘body’ Lsg
<i>poklade</i>	[poklade]	‘treasure’ Vsg	<i>pokladě</i>	[poklaʒe]	‘treasure’ Lsg
<i>týdne</i>	[ti:dne]	‘week’ Gsg	<i>týdně</i>	[ti:dɲe]	‘weekly’
<i>hrabe</i>	[hrabe]	‘digs’	<i>hrabě</i>	[hrabje]	‘count’
<i>fez</i>	[fez]	‘fez’	<i>harfě</i>	[harfje]	‘harp’ DLsg
<i>kape</i>	[kape]	‘drips’	<i>kápě</i>	[ka:pje]	‘hood’
<i>venčit</i>	[ventʃit]	‘take out’	<i>věňčit</i>	[vjentʃit]	‘crown’
<i>mech</i>	[mex]	‘moss’	<i>měch</i>	[mpɛx]	‘bellows’

The graphemes *t'*, *ť*, *d'*, *ď*, and *ň* are used to indicate [c], [ʃ] and [ɲ] when they appear before a back vowel, before a consonant, or in word-final position. *t'* and *ť* are just two different ways of representing the same letter, depending upon what sort of font or typewriter is available; the same is true for *d'* and *ď*.

	before a back vowel		before consonant or word-final	
<i>t'ápat</i> or <i>ťápat</i>	[ca:pat]	‘toddle’	<i>zaplat' me</i> or <i>zaplaťme</i>	[zaplacme] ‘let’s pay!’
<i>t'ukat</i> or <i>ťukat</i>	[cukat]	‘tap’	<i>zaplat' or</i> <i>zaplať</i>	[zaplac] ‘pay!’
<i>d'ábel</i> or <i>ďábel</i>	[ʃa:bel]	‘devil’	<i>zařid' me</i> or <i>zařidme</i>	[zarʒɪʃme] ‘let’s organize!’

Whereas the presence or absence of a diacritic is ignored in alphabetizing vowel letters (for instance *e*, *é*, and *ě* are all alphabetized as if they were a single grapheme), the presence of a diacritic gives a consonant letter its own distinct place in the alphabet, directly after the same consonant letter without the diacritic. Thus *č* is alphabetized after *c*, *ř* is alphabetized after *r*, *š* is alphabetized after *s*, and *ž* is alphabetized after *z*. However *t'*, *ť*, *d'*, *ď*, and *ň* constitute an exception to this rule, and they are alphabetized like *t*, *d* and *n*.

The grapheme *ch* is considered for all practical purposes (alphabetization, crossword puzzles, etc.) a single letter.

The graphemes *g*, *q*, *w*, and *x* appear only in foreign words.

*Vowels (foreign elements are in parentheses)*

short vowels						long vowels			
i			u	í		é	(ó)	ú, ů	
	e		o						
		a					á		
diphthongs									
ij	ej	aj	oj	uj	ůj	(eu)	(au)	ou	

Czech has a classic five-vowel system, consisting of short *a*, *e*, *i/y*, *o*, *u* and long *á*, *é*, *í/ý*, *ó*, *ú/ů*. Length is phonemic and in most instances indicated by an acute accent. Long *ú/ů* can be written *ú* in initial position or after a prefix (*úzký* ‘narrow’, *zaúčtovat* ‘calculate’), but *ů* elsewhere (*dům* ‘house’ Nsg, *domů* ‘house’ Gpl, where it continues Late Common Slavic *o*). Long *ó* occurs in foreign borrowings (*próza* ‘prose’) and sometimes in emphatic usage (*móře* ‘lots’ CCz vs. *moře* ‘sea’). The primary (phonemic) distinction between the two vowel subsystems is one of quantity, but in the case of the high vowels short *i/y* vs. long *í/ý* and short *u* vs. long *ú/ů* there is a perceptible phonetic difference as well. Czech generally does not tolerate vowel chains; there are no vowel chains in native roots, and where two vowels meet at a morpheme boundary

(when a prefix ending in a vowel is added to a stem beginning with one), a glottal stop is usually inserted to separate them: *neomylně* [neʃomɪlɲe] ‘without error’. The diphthong *ou* is a native sequence (*náhodou* ‘by chance’), and foreign borrowings have introduced *au* (*auto* ‘automobile’) and *eu* (*leukémie* ‘leukemia’). Since the back glide [ɤ] is restricted to diphthongs, its existence is non-distinctive and therefore sub-phonemic, acting as an allophone of *u*; it does not enjoy the status of the front glide *j*. Czech has six diphthongs ending in *j*, two of which are relatively rare, *aj* (*hraj* ‘play!’) and *új* (*můj* ‘my’), plus the widespread *ej* (*dělej* ‘do!’), *ij* (*šij* ‘sew!’), *oj* (*dojmový* ‘emotional’), and *uj* (*miluj* ‘love!’). In foreign words presenting vowel chains containing *i*, if the chain begins with *i*, Czech pronunciation inserts a non-orthographic *j*: *materiál* [materɪja:l] ‘material’, *biologie* [brɪjologɪje] ‘biology’ Nsg, *biologii* [brɪjologɪjɪ] ‘biology’ Asg; if the chain ends with *i* followed by a consonant, it is pronounced as *j*: *detail* [detajl] ‘detail’, *pleistocén* [plejstotse:n] ‘pleistocene’.

### The liquids *r* and *l*

The liquids *r* and *l* can participate in both syllable peaks (as vowels) and slopes (as consonants). As vowels, they are only short (length is not phonemic) and occur only between non-vocalic elements (after a consonant and before another consonant or word boundary: *krk* ‘neck’, *nesl* ‘he brought’, hence there are no initial syllabic liquids). Vocalic *m* is possible in two words: *sedm* ‘seven’ and *osm* ‘eight’, but the usual pronunciation is [sedɔm], [osɔm].

### Consonants

	labials		dentals		palatals		velars		laryngeals
<i>obstruents:</i>									
<i>stops</i>	p	b	t	d	tʰ	dʰ	k	g	h
<i>fricatives</i>	f	v	s	z	š	ž	ch		
<i>affricates</i>			c		č				
<i>trill+fricative</i>				ř					
<i>sonorants:</i>									
<i>glide</i>						j			
<i>nasal</i>		m		n		ň			
<i>lateral</i>				l					
<i>trill</i>				r					

Stops are not aspirated.

The most pervasive type of assimilation is certainly voiced vs. voiceless (described below in 1.2). These assimilations produce voiced allophones for unpaired obstruents in the chart: [dz] for *c* (*leckdo* [ledzɔdo] ‘anyone’), [dʒ] for *č* (*léčba* [le:dʒba] ‘cure’), and voiceless [t̪ʰ] for *ř* (*keř* [ke:t̪ʰ] ‘bush’). The remaining two unpaired obstruents, *ch* and *h*, to some extent serve as partners, despite their disparate places of articulation. But while the devoicing of *h* is common and regularly produces *ch* [x] (*Bůh* [bu:x] ‘God’), the voicing of *ch* is both less frequent and less clear in its result. It appears that the assimilative voicing of *ch* can, particularly after *i*, yield [ɣ] (*abych byl* [abrɪɣbɪl] ‘so that I would’) as well as [h]; alternatively there may be no voicing at all. There are two more sounds which should be added to the inventory of consonants, but are clearly subphonemic: [ŋ], which is purely a positional variant of *n* before a velar (*tank* [taŋk] ‘tank’), and the glottal stop [ʔ] which is recommended but not obligatory before word-initial vowels and between vowels at the prefix boundary, and is not indicated in the orthography.

Ř (*moře* [mor̩ʒe] ‘sea’), along with its voiceless allophone [r̩ʰ] (*kouř* [kour̩ʰ] ‘smoke’) is an unusual item, and Czech is the only European language to have this sound. It is a unit phoneme,

which means that it is simultaneously a dental and a palatal.  $\tilde{R}$  is usually the last sound acquired by Czech children and its mispronunciation constitutes over 50% of their speech defects (Palková 1994: 347, 350). Also rather unusual in languages and very difficult for foreigners to pronounce are the palatal stops  $d'$  and  $t'$ .

$F$  is similar to [dz] and [dʒ], in that it exists in Slavic words almost entirely as a voicing partner of  $v$  and is phonemic only in foreign borrowings. It does, though, appear in at least one native root (etymologically derived from a consonant cluster), *doufat* 'hope', and the number of non-native and nativized stems (as in *telefonovat* 'telephone', *trefit* 'hit') with  $f$  is vastly larger than that of [dz] and [dʒ]. In the past few centuries initial  $f$  has also figured in a number of native onomatopoeic creations, such as *foukat* 'blow', *frčet* 'buzz', and *funět* 'snort'. The situation of  $g$  (as a voiced variant of  $k$  and a sound found in many foreign words, such as *gól* 'goal in sports') is similar, and this sound is also found in borrowings involving an intervocalic  $k$  in the source language, as in *plakát* [plaga:t] or [plaka:t] 'poster'.  $S$  is likewise sometimes rendered [z] in borrowings, as in *disertace* [dɪzertatse] 'dissertation' (optionally spelled *dizertace*). The spelling of  $z$  for borrowed intervocalic  $s$  has been codified in spelling reforms for words like *univerzita* 'university' and *filozofie* 'philosophy'.

## 1.2 Phonological rules

### *Stress*

Stress is not phonemic and always falls on the first syllable of a phonological word. However, a variety of types of clitics makes the identification of a phonological word fairly complex, and there are also some exceptions to the rule, particularly when unstressed proclitics are attached to a word (e.g., the unstressed proclitic *to* 'that' in the single phonological word formed by *To vím* 'I know that', which is stressed on *vím*).

For the purposes of stress, a phonological word consists of a stress-bearing word, plus adjacent stressless words or particles. The stress-bearing words are nouns, adjectives, verbs (except auxiliaries), most adverbs, prepositions of two or more syllables, numerals, non-clitic pronouns, and some conjunctions; these words can and normally do bear stress. There are three types of stressless words which participate with the stress-bearing words in the formation of phonological words:

a) most conjunctions, the word *pan* 'Mr.' (e.g., *pan Novák* 'Mr. Novák'), some adverbs (depending on context) and some possessives and forms of the demonstrative and indefinite pronouns *ten*, *všechn* (when followed immediately by the word modified, as in *všechn chléb* 'all the bread') are stressless and form a phonological word with the following stressed word and whatever enclitics follow it, but remain stressless (unlike the pre-posed items in b);

b) monosyllabic prepositions and the pre-posed negative particle *ne-* are not intrinsically stress-bearing, but, when present, take over the stress of the following intrinsically stressed element, e.g., *Znám ho* 'I know him' when negated becomes *Neznám ho* 'I don't know him', and *čtvrtek* 'Thursday' in the presence of a preposition becomes *ve čtvrtek* 'on Thursday';

c) enclitic pronouns, conditional and past tense auxiliary forms follow the first stress-bearing word in a clause; these act as additional unstressed syllables in the phonological word and are totally dependent (cannot appear in initial position). There are also semi-dependent enclitics, primarily *to* 'that', prepositional phrases and some other elements (including certain adverbs) that may attach to the first stressed phonological word in a clause; the stress of these items varies (*to* is usually unstressed, the remaining semi-dependent enclitics frequently bear their own stress).

Thus a phonological word contains the following maximal structure:

- { a)-type stressless proclitic +
- b)-type stressless word receiving stress +
- stress-bearing word, stressed on first syllable in absence of b) +
- c)-type stressless enclitics }

The following phonological words illustrate the various possible combinations:

**a) + b) + stress-bearing word + c)**

*a* 'nedala jsi mu ho  
and not-gave AUX him it  
'and you didn't give it to him'

**a) + b) + stress-bearing word**

*a* 'nevěděl  
and not-knew  
'and he didn't know'

**a) + stress-bearing word + c)**

*pan* 'Starý by  
Mr. Starý AUX  
'Mr. Starý would'

**a) + stress-bearing word**

*ta* 'kniha  
that book  
'that book'

**b) + stress-bearing word + c)**

'do školy bych  
to school AUX  
'to school I would'

**b) + stress-bearing word**

'na parkovišti  
on parking-lot  
'at the parking-lot'

**stress-bearing word + c)**

'Dal by ti to  
gave AUX you it  
'He would give it to you'

The placement of the c)-type enclitics is governed by both phonology and syntax/semantics. The default position is immediately following the first stress-bearing word in a clause, but this rule is overridden whenever it would involve inserting an enclitic between the constituents of a syntactic/semantic unit. Thus the enclitic auxiliary *jsem* appears only after the fourth stress-bearing word in the following sentence:

*Tu* 'knihu 'o Čapkově 'životě a 'tvorbě *jsem* 'nečetl.  
that book about Čapek's life and work AUX not-read  
'I haven't read that book about Čapek's life and work.'

*Glottal stop*

The glottal stop [ʔ] marks morpheme boundaries at the beginning of words and morphemes commencing with a vowel. Though not obligatory, it can serve a distinctive function (enhancing the distinction between a diphthong and a vowel chain), as in:

*proudí*  
[prouʒi:]  
root *proud* + ending *í*  
'(s/he/it) gushes'

vs.

*proudí*  
[proʔuʒi:]  
prefix *pro* + root *ud* + ending *í*  
'(s/he/it) will smoke through'  
(adapted from Palková 1994: 192)



Word-internally, the glottal stop appears primarily after prefixes ending in a vowel (as in the above example) or *j*. Word-initially, the glottal stop will devoice a voiced obstruent: *v Americe* [fʔameritse] ‘in America’, *od Aleny* [ʔotʔaleni] ‘from Alena’. Even speakers who do not use the glottal stop devoice these obstruents.

For speakers who use the glottal stop consistently as prescribed, all syllables have the shape of CV or CVC (where C can stand for a consonant, including the glottal stop or a consonant cluster).

### *Voicing phenomena*

Voiced-voiceless assimilations constitute the most consistent and widespread phonotactic phenomenon in Czech, yet are not reflected in the orthography. Only obstruents participate in voicing phenomena; sonorants neither participate nor condition these assimilations (contrast: *směna* [smɛna] ‘shift’ vs. *změna* [zmɛna] ‘change’). The exceptional obstruent phoneme *v* participates (can be devoiced: *plavky* [plafki] ‘swimsuit’), but cannot condition voicing (*svoje* [svoje] ‘own’, not \*[zvoje]). Voicing phenomena create positional allophones also for obstruents unpaired for voicing; e.g., *h* and *ch* act as voicing partners (cf. *sníh* [snix], *sněhu* [snɛhu] ‘snow’ Nsg, GDLsg), although the latter may be realized as [ɣ], as mentioned above in 1.1.

Regressive voicing takes place word-internally and across prefix/preposition boundaries when the last consonant in a cluster of obstruents is voiced: *kdo* [gdo] ‘who’, *léčba* [le:dʒba] ‘cure’, *sbalit* (prefix *s* + root *bal*) [zbalit] ‘pack’, *s bratrem* [zbratrem] ‘with brother’, *k dětem* [gɟetɛm] ‘to the children’.

Devoicing takes place word-finally, and devoicing is regressive word-internally and across prefix/preposition boundaries when the last consonant in a cluster of obstruents is voiceless: *sjezd* [sjest] ‘conference’, *tvář* [tva:ɾf] ‘cheek’, *podstatný* (prefix *pod* + root *stat*) [potstatni:] ‘essential’, *nad sochou* [natsoxou] ‘above the statue’.

Progressive devoicing involves only the following initial consonant clusters: *sh-* *chř-*, *kř-*, *skř-*, *př-*, *spř-*, *tř-*, *stř-*. Devoicing is regular for *ř* after word-initial voiceless obstruents (initial clusters of *cř-* and *čř-* do not exist): *střep* [strɛp] ‘shard’, *kříž* [krɟi:ʃ] ‘cross’. Although progressive devoicing is the norm for *sh-* (*shánět* [sxa:ɲet] ‘seek’), there are several common words that observe the usual regressive voicing rule (*shora* [zhora] ‘from upstairs’).

### *Consonant clusters*

In contrast to its avoidance of vowel strings, Czech has a remarkable tolerance for consonant clusters, permitting strings of four and even five distinct consonants: *nad hřbetem* [nadhrɟbetɛm] ‘over the back’, *s pštrosím* [spɟtrosem] ‘with the ostrich’.

Regular assimilation in place of articulation occurs in the word-internal backing of *n* to [ŋ] before velars: *spánku* [spa:ɲku] ‘sleep’ Gsg. Note also the combination of assimilation and simplification of consonant clusters that occur across the prefix-root boundary, such as *rozšířit* [roʃi:ɾɟit] ‘spread’.

The remaining assimilations or simplifications are limited to more specific environments or lexical items, and some of these modifications (particularly the latter ones) are considered colloquial: the initial *j-* in consonant clusters is omitted (*jsem* [sem] ‘I am’, *jdeme* [deme] ‘we are going’, *jméno* [me:ɲo] ‘name’; *č-* dissimilates to [ʃ] in the word *čtyři* [ʃtrɟi] ‘four’; *vzp-* simplifies to [sp-] in *vzpomenout* [spomenout] ‘recall’; *jablko* ‘apple’ is pronounced [japko]; etc.

There is a tendency to simplify geminate consonants; this tendency is stronger root-internally and weaker across morphological boundaries: *panna* [pana] ‘virgin’, but

*poddůstojník* [poddustojnik] ‘sergeant’. This tendency is often observed in the spelling of foreign borrowings: *tenis* [tenis] ‘tennis’, *komunismus* [komonismus] ‘communism’.

### *Vowel epenthesis*

An epenthetic *e* can be inserted between a prefix or preposition ending in -C and a following morpheme beginning in C-, however there is no good rule for predicting this, since similar and sometimes even the same environment will show forms both with and without the vowel:

<i>vejít</i> prefix <i>v</i> + ‘walk’ ‘enter (on foot)’	vs.	<i>vjet</i> prefix <i>v</i> + ‘ride’ ‘enter (by conveyance)’
<i>seběhnout</i> prefix <i>s</i> + ‘run’ ‘run down’	vs.	<i>sběhnout</i> prefix <i>s</i> + ‘run’ ‘run down’

Epenthesis is regular only before the oblique forms of the 1sg personal pronoun, and somewhat less regular before forms of *všechen* ‘all’: *nade mnou* ‘above me’, but *nade vším / nad vším* ‘above all’.

The presence of the same consonant or a voiced/voiceless counterpart makes epenthesis mandatory: *ve frontě* ‘in line’, *beze slov* ‘without words’, *ze západu* ‘from the west’. Epenthesis is optional when the prepositions *s* and *z* are followed by the similar consonants *š* and *ž*: *se školou* or *s školou* ‘with the school’, *se ženou* or *s ženou* ‘with the wife’.

The preposition *k* ‘toward’ can have *u* as its epenthetic vowel in certain set expressions with nouns in initial *p*-: *ku podivu* ‘to (one’s) surprise’; otherwise the normal *e* appears: *ke stolu* or *k stolu* ‘to the table’, *ke mně* ‘to me’. The regular morphophonemic alternation of *e* with a zero in morphemes is discussed in Chapter 2.

### *Phonology of Colloquial Czech*

The primary phonological difference between literary and colloquial Czech is that the former has more fully realized the vowel changes of the Bohemian dialects presented in 0.3, producing a more balanced system for long vowels and diphthongs. Whereas Literary Czech has shifted only its long back vowels (*ó* > *ů/ú* and *ú* > *ou*), Colloquial Czech has carried out the corresponding changes in its long front vowels as well, producing *é* > *í/ý* and *ý* > *ej*. Since both etymological *é* and *ý* figure as essential components in the inflectional (and to a lesser extent derivational) morphology of Czech, these vowel changes also play a prominent role in differentiating the morphologies of the two registers of Czech. The following is an inventory of these and other significant phonological features of the spoken language. For more details, the reader is referred to Townsend 1990: 23-47 and Sgall&Hronek 1992: 30-37.

1) *é* > *í/ý*. The result is usually spelled *ý* after velars and *r* (see spelling rules above) and after *t*, *d*, *n* (since it does not condition the shift to palatals), but *i*, *í* elsewhere (though spellings vary after *l*). This change is quite consistent, regardless of position: LCz *mléko* : CCz *mlíko* ‘milk’; LCz *nést* : CCz *nýst* ‘carry’; LCz *dobré* : CCz *dobrý* ‘good’ Nsgn. This vowel change is resisted in foreign borrowings and also a few native roots, which retain *é* even in the spoken language: *malér* ‘misfortune’ (cf. French *malheur*), *lék* ‘medicine’.

2) *ý* > *ej*. Although the vast majority of examples involve *ý* as the etymological source, after *c*, *l*, *s*, *z*, and *ž* this change can include *í* > *ej*: LCz *cítit* : CCz *cejtit* ‘feel’; LCz *zítra* : CCz *zejtra* ‘tomorrow’; LCz *síto* : CCz *sejto* ‘sieve’. This change is also reasonably consistent: LCz *mýdlo* : CCz *mejdllo* ‘soap’; LCz *malý* : CCz *malej* ‘small’, although it is resisted in most nouns prefixed in *vý*- and some others: *výběr* ‘choice’, *dýka* ‘dagger’. Recent borrowings such as *rýma* ‘cold’, *kýč* ‘kitsch’ do not reflect *ý* > *ej*, but older ones often do, as in LCz *brýle* : CCz *brejle*

'glasses' (cf. German *Brille*) and LCz *rýže* : CCz *rejže* 'rice' (cf. older German *ri:s*, modern German *Reis*); however, the paucity of examples makes it hard to state this as a rule.

3) *ú* > *ou* in initial position. Whereas literary Czech avoids this change in initial position, it is occasionally implemented in the spoken language: LCz *úřad* : CCz *ouřad* 'office'; LCz *úzký* : CCz *ouzký* 'narrow'. This change, however, is stylistically marked, inconsistently realized, and is gradually dying out.

4) *V*-prothesis before initial *o-*. Initial *o-* tends to develop a prothetic back glide in the spoken language, maximally realized as *v*, although this is sometimes avoided when a *v* follows the initial *o*: LCz *ocas* : CCz *vocas* 'tail', but only *ovoce* 'fruit' and *ovšem* 'of course' (and note also the LCz word *otec* 'father' which is replaced in CCz by *tatínek* or *táta* rather than receiving prothetic *v-*). Although not entirely consistent, *v*-prothesis is very common and can even include some foreign words: LCz *olej* : CCz *volej* 'oil'. It can also occur at the preposition/prefix boundary: LCz *do očí* : CCz *do vočí* 'into eyes', LCz *poodejít* : CCz *povodejít* 'step aside'. In contrast, the (etymologically) prothetic *j* in initial *je* is dropped in colloquial Czech in the LCz word *ještě* : CCz *eště* 'still', but this is an isolated example.

5) Length adjustments. The spoken register can both shorten vowels that are long in literary Czech, and lengthen vowels that are short. Shortening of long vowels is fairly common when it involves *í* > *i* and *ů* > *u* in desinences: LCz *prosím* : CCz *prosim* 'I ask; please', LCz *stolů* : CCz *stolu* 'tables' Gpl; however shortening of other vowels and outside of desinences is sporadic and optional: LCz *říkat* : CCz *říkat/říkat* 'say', LCz *spoléhat* : CCz *spoléhat/spolehat*. Note that shortening can also take place after *é* > *í/y*, producing *ily*: LCz *novém* : CCz *novým/novym* 'new' Lsgm/n. Vowel lengthening is less common and largely restricted to particular words and expressive contexts: LCz *dveře* : CCz *dvěře* 'door', LCz *nahoře* : CCz *nahóře* 'upstairs'.

6) Consonant adjustments. Consonants in certain clusters tend to be deleted both word-initially and word-internally, particularly in high-frequency words: LCz *když* : CCz *dyž* 'when; if', LCz *džbán* : CCz *žbán* 'pitcher', LCz *kerý* : CCz *kerej* 'which', LCz *vezmu* : CCz *vemu* 'I take', LCz *zvláštní* : CCz *zvlášní* or *zlaštní* 'peculiar'. On occasion more drastic truncations are observed: LCz *nějaký* : CCz *ňákej* 'some', LCz *člověk* : CCz *ček* 'person'. Word-finally spoken Czech regularly drops the final *l* in masculine past forms: LCz *vedl* : CCz *ved* [vet] 'he led'. Initial *s* followed by a stop may appear as *š* in foreign words: LCz *student* : CCz *šstudent*. Other consonantal adjustments are restricted to specific lexical items: LCz *ženská* : CCz *žencká* 'female', LCz *sahat* : CCz *šahat* 'touch'. The status of most of these consonant adjustments is less a reflection of the norms of CCz than a result of the dynamics of rapid and repeated pronunciation.

## 2. Morphology

### 2.1 Inflectional morphology

Inflectional morphology is expressed in terms of synthetic terminal desinences which are added to the stems of inflected parts of speech: nouns, adjectives, verbs, and most pronouns. Inflectional desinences conflate all relevant categories (gender, number, and case for nouns and adjectives; person and number for non-past conjugations; and gender, person, and number for past conjugations) and consist of from zero to three morphemes. All native autosemantic stems are inflected, as are the vast majority of foreign borrowings, sometimes with the help of a native suffix which gives them a stem characteristic of the part of speech they belong to. Uninflected borrowings, some of which are cited below, are rare.

#### 2.1.0 Morphophonemic alternations in inflection

##### *Vowel-zero alternations*

Roots, suffixes, and (as mentioned in 1.2) prefixes and prepositions can all produce alternations of *e* with a zero; this alternation, particularly in roots and suffixes, is identified with specific morphemes: *beru* ‘I take’: *brát* ‘take (infinitive)’, *pes* ‘dog’ Nsg : *psi* ‘dogs’ Npl, *otec* ‘father’ Nsg : *otce* ‘father’ Gsg, *deska* ‘board’ Nsg : *desek* ‘boards’ Gpl. On rare occasions there may be two vowel-zero alternations operative in consecutive syllables: *švec* ‘cobbler’ Nsg : *ševce* ‘cobbler’ Gsg.

##### *Qualitative vowel alternations*

These alternations are evident in comparison of historically “hard-stem” (ending in *b, d, f, g, h, ch, k, l, m, n, p, r, s, t, v, z*) and “soft-stem” (ending in *b, c, č, d/d', j, l, m, n/ň, p, ř, s, š, t/t', v, z, ž*) paradigms (note that *b, d, m, l, s, t, v, z* appear on both lists and are associated with both hard and soft stems). This distinction is active in all classes of inflected words. Where the hard-stem and soft-stem paradigms differ, the hard stems will combine with desinences starting with a back vowel, whereas the soft stems will combine with desinences commencing in a corresponding front vowel. Despite the fact that they are phonologically indistinguishable, *y/ý* counts as a back vowel, and *i/í* as a front vowel. Hard stems can combine with both *e* and *e/ě* (note that *e/ě* is spelled *ě* after *b, d, f, m, n, p, t, v*, but *e* elsewhere):

<i>a</i> vs. <i>e/ě</i>	<i>moucha</i> ‘fly’ Nsg vs. <i>práce</i> ‘work’ Nsg <i>nesa</i> ‘carrying’ pres gerund vs. <i>děkuje</i> ‘thanking’ pres gerund <i>ta</i> ‘that’ Nsgf vs. <i>naše</i> Nsgf
<i>á</i> vs. <i>í</i>	<i>druhá</i> ‘second’ Nsgf vs. <i>první</i> ‘first’ Nsgf
<i>e/ě</i> vs. <i>i</i>	<i>mouše</i> ‘fly’ DLsg vs. <i>práci</i> ‘work’ DLsg
<i>o</i> vs. <i>e/ě</i>	<i>mouchu</i> ‘fly’ Vsg vs. <i>práce</i> ‘work’ Vsg
<i>u</i> vs. <i>i</i>	<i>nesu</i> ‘I carry’ vs. <i>děkuji</i> ‘I thank’ <i>mouchu</i> ‘fly’ Asg vs. <i>práci</i> ‘work’ Asg <i>tu</i> ‘that’ Asgf vs. <i>naši</i> ‘our’ Asgf
<i>ou</i> vs. <i>í</i>	<i>mouchou</i> ‘fly’ Isg vs. <i>práci</i> ‘work’ Isg
<i>y</i> vs. <i>i</i>	<i>výbory</i> ‘committee’ Ipl vs. <i>koši</i> ‘basket’ Ipl <i>stoly</i> ‘tables’ Npl vs. <i>psi</i> ‘dogs’ Npl
<i>ý</i> vs. <i>í</i>	<i>druhý</i> ‘second’ Nsgm vs. <i>první</i> ‘first’ Nsgm

##### *Quantitative vowel alternations*

Due to historical factors, some of these alternations also involve qualitative shifts. The last two alternations are rare in inflection, limited primarily to stem shortening in imperatives:

<i>á</i> vs. <i>a</i>	<i>práce</i> vs. <i>prací</i> ‘work’ Nsg vs. Isg
-----------------------	--

<i>é</i> vs. <i>e</i>	<i>nést</i> ‘carry’ vs. <i>nesu</i> ‘I carry’
<i>í</i> vs. <i>e/ě</i>	<i>sníh</i> vs. <i>sněhu</i> ‘snow’ Nsg vs. Gsg
<i>ů</i> vs. <i>o</i>	<i>hůl</i> vs. <i>hole</i> ‘cane’ Nsg vs. Gsg
<i>ou</i> vs. <i>u</i>	<i>koupit</i> ‘buy’ vs. <i>kup</i> ‘buy!’
<i>ý</i> vs. <i>y</i>	<i>mýlit se</i> ‘err’ vs. <i>myl se</i> ‘err!’
<i>í</i> vs. <i>i</i>	<i>navštívit</i> ‘visit’ vs. <i>navštív</i> ‘visit!’
<i>ů</i> vs. <i>u</i>	<i>rozpůlit</i> ‘split’ vs. <i>rozpu</i> ‘split!’

*Type 1 (“half-softening”) consonant alternations*

Type 1 alternations are characteristic of declension and appear primarily in the Nplanim of nouns and adjectives, the Dsg, Lsg, and Lpl of nouns, and the formation of adverbs and comparatives from adjectives. They are also encountered in past passive participles of verbs in *-it* and in imperatives. In this alternation, labials add *j* or *ň*, dentals shift to palatals, and velars shift to dentals or palatals:

<i>p</i> vs. <i>pj</i>	<i>hloupý</i> ‘stupid’ vs. <i>hloupě</i> ‘stupidly’
<i>b</i> vs. <i>bj</i>	<i>skladba</i> vs. <i>skladbě</i> ‘composition’ Nsg vs. DLsg
<i>f</i> vs. <i>ffj</i>	<i>harfa</i> vs. <i>harfě</i> ‘harp’ Nsg vs. DLsg
<i>v</i> vs. <i>vj</i>	<i>kráva</i> vs. <i>krávě</i> ‘cow’ Nsg vs. DLsg
<i>m</i> vs. <i>mň</i>	<i>strmý</i> ‘steep’ vs. <i>strmější</i> ‘steeper’
<i>t</i> vs. <i>t’</i>	<i>studenty</i> vs. <i>studenti</i> ‘student’ Apl vs. Npl
<i>d</i> vs. <i>d’</i>	<i>hrdý</i> ‘proud’ vs. <i>hrdě</i> ‘proudly’
<i>n</i> vs. <i>ň</i>	<i>královna</i> vs. <i>královně</i> ‘queen’ Nsg vs. DLsg
<i>r</i> vs. <i>ř</i>	<i>sestra</i> vs. <i>sestře</i> ‘sister’ Nsg vs. DLsg
<i>k</i> vs. <i>c</i>	<i>kluk</i> vs. <i>kluci, klucích</i> ‘boy’ Nsg vs. Npl, Lpl
<i>h</i> vs. <i>z</i>	<i>drahý</i> ‘dear’ vs. <i>draze</i> ‘dearly’
<i>g</i> vs. <i>z</i>	<i>Olga</i> vs. <i>Olze</i> ‘Olga’ Nsg vs. DLsg
<i>ch</i> vs. <i>š</i>	<i>tichý</i> ‘quiet’ vs. <i>tíše</i> ‘quietly’
<i>sk</i> vs. <i>št’</i>	<i>ruský</i> vs. <i>ruští</i> ‘Russian’ Nsgm vs. Nplanim
<i>ck</i> vs. <i>čť</i>	<i>anglický</i> vs. <i>angličtí</i> ‘English’ Nsgm vs. Nplanim

*Type 2 (“full-softening”) consonant alternations*

In Type 2, the dental/palatal stops lenite partially (*t/t’* vs. *c*) or fully (*d/d’* vs. *z*), whereas all others shift toward palatals. These alternations are typically found in the Vsg of masculine nouns, passive participles (and associated deverbal nouns), possessive adjectives, comparative adjectives, and the non-past conjugation of certain verbs.

<i>t/t’</i> vs. <i>c</i>	<i>platit</i> ‘pay’ vs. <i>placen</i> ‘paid’
<i>d/d’</i> vs. <i>z</i>	<i>hodit</i> ‘throw’ vs. <i>hozen</i> ‘thrown’
<i>s</i> vs. <i>š</i>	<i>vysoký</i> ‘high’ vs. <i>vyšší</i> ‘higher’
<i>z</i> vs. <i>ž</i>	<i>mazat</i> ‘smear’ vs. <i>mažu</i> ‘I smear’
<i>n</i> vs. <i>ň</i>	<i>Hana</i> ‘Hana’ vs. <i>Hanin</i> ‘Hana’s’ Nsgm
<i>r</i> vs. <i>ř</i>	<i>mistr</i> vs. <i>mistře</i> ‘master’ Nsg vs. Vsg
<i>sl</i> vs. <i>šl</i>	<i>poslat</i> ‘send’ vs. <i>pošlu</i> ‘I send’ (rare)
<i>st/st’</i> vs. <i>št’</i>	<i>čistit</i> ‘clean’ vs. <i>čištěn</i> ‘cleaned’
<i>zd/zd’</i> vs. <i>žd’</i>	<i>jezdit</i> ‘ride’ vs. <i>ježdění</i> ‘riding’
<i>k</i> vs. <i>č</i>	<i>hezký</i> ‘pretty’ vs. <i>hezčí</i> ‘prettier’
<i>c</i> vs. <i>č</i>	<i>chlapec</i> vs. <i>chlapče</i> ‘boy’ Nsg vs. Vsg
<i>h</i> vs. <i>ž</i>	<i>lhát</i> ‘lie’ vs. <i>lžu</i> ‘I lie’
<i>g</i> vs. <i>ž</i>	<i>Olga</i> ‘Olga’ vs. <i>Olžin</i> ‘Olga’s’ Nsgm
<i>ch</i> vs. <i>š</i>	<i>suchý</i> ‘dry’ vs. <i>sušší</i> ‘drier’

### Isolated and suppletive types

Some more drastic morphophonemic alternations exhibiting vowel-zero or consonant alternations or both involve small classes of words or single lexical items; these are much more frequent among verbs than nouns.

**švec** vs. **ševce** ‘cobbler’ Nsg vs. Gsg

**psát** ‘write’ vs. **píšu** ‘I write’

**vzít** ‘take’ vs. **vezmu** ‘I take’  
vs. **vzal** ‘took’

**žít** ‘live’ vs. **žiji** ‘I live’ vs. **žil** ‘lived’

**moci** ‘be able’ vs. **mohl** ‘could’ vs.  
**můžeš** ‘you can’

**mést** ‘sweep’ vs. **metu** ‘I sweep’

**čest** vs. **cti** ‘honor’ NAsg vs. GDLsg

**hnát** ‘chase’ vs. **ženu** ‘I chase’

**krýt** ‘cover’ vs. **kryji** ‘I cover’  
vs. **kryl** ‘covered’

**začít** ‘begin’ vs. **začnu** ‘I begin’ vs. **začal**  
‘began’

**péci** ‘bake’ vs. **pekł** ‘baked’ vs.  
**pečeš** ‘you bake’

**jíst** ‘eat’ vs. **jím** ‘I eat’ vs. **jedł** ‘ate’

### 2.1.1 Noun morphology

All nouns have grammatical gender (masculine, feminine, or neuter), and with very few exceptions (a handful of undeclinable borrowed words) all are declined for both number (singular, plural; though some words occur only in one of the numbers, e.g., *nůžky* ‘scissors’, which is plural only) and case (nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative, locative, and instrumental). Each gender has its own set of characteristic paradigms, including hard-stem types, soft-stem types, and special types. Masculine paradigms in addition regularly signal animacy. The vocative is formally distinct only in the singular. Below we discuss the paradigms for masculine, neuter, and feminine adding notes on case/number endings which require commentary. The paradigms below are intended to be representative, but there is considerable variation in many paradigms, and it is often hard to establish a definitive norm.

#### 2.1.1.1 Masculine paradigms

##### Hard stems

	Inanimate: <i>rozbor</i> ‘analysis’	
	sg	pl
N	<i>rozbor</i>	<i>rozbory</i>
G	<i>rozboru</i>	<i>rozborů</i>
D	<i>rozboru</i>	<i>rozborům</i>
A	<i>rozbor</i>	<i>rozbory</i>
V	<i>rozboře</i>	
L	<i>rozboru</i>	<i>rozborech</i>
I	<i>rozbořem</i>	<i>rozbory</i>

	Animate: <i>bratr</i> ‘brother’	
	sg	pl
N	<i>bratr</i>	<i>bratři</i>
G	<i>bratra</i>	<i>bratrů</i>
D	<i>bratrovi/-u</i>	<i>bratrům</i>
A	<i>bratra</i>	<i>bratry</i>
V	<i>bratře</i>	
L	<i>bratrovi/-u</i>	<i>bratrech</i>
I	<i>bratřem</i>	<i>bratry</i>

### Animacy

Masculine paradigms distinguish animate from inanimate in the singular through nominative-accusative syncretism for inanimates, as opposed to genitive-accusative syncretism for animates, and in the plural through special Npl endings (*-i, -é, -ové*) for animate nouns. Variant endings in the Gsg, Dsg, and Lsg also contribute to readings of animacy vs. inanimacy, although the implementation of these endings does not always follow the exact parameters of the distinction and may involve other factors. Simply stated, the class of animates includes all male (or grammatically masculine) living creatures capable of motion (i.e., non-vegetable). In the case of very small creatures, such as *bacil* ‘bacillus’, *mikrob* ‘microbe’ animacy is open to interpretation. There are additionally several classes of facultative animates, nouns which refer to inanimate objects but display animate endings. Animal names used to refer to inanimates regularly produce this phenomenon: *koníček* ‘little horse; hobby’ is animate in both meanings. Most other facultative animates show some close connection to human males, in terms of appearance (*sněhulák* ‘snowman’, *maňásek* ‘puppet’), existence of homonyms referring to male humans (*talián* ‘Italian; Italian sausage’, which motivates facultative animacy for other sausages, such as *vuřt* ‘wurst’), and stereotypes of male-pattern behavior (drinking of alcohol: *panák* ‘shot’; smoking of cigarettes: *čmoud* ‘drag from a cigarette’; card-playing: *ferbl* ‘name of a card game’; sports: *kraul* ‘crawl (swimming)’; and mathematics: *násobenec* ‘multiplicand’). Facultative animacy primarily involves the GAsg and to a lesser extent the Npl, but does not always extend to the DLsg.

Gsg: about 97% of inanimate masculine hard stem nouns have *-u*, 2% have *-a*, and 1% permit both endings (Janda 1996: 128). Nouns with *-a* include, obviously, all facultative animates, plus an assortment of common everyday words (*zákon* ‘law’, *oběd* ‘lunch’), including, particularly, those designating buildings (*kostel* ‘church’), locations (*Jičín, Tachov*), time periods (*dnešek* ‘today’, *leden* ‘January’), and shapes (*trojúhelník* ‘triangle’).

DLsg: most animate nouns in this paradigm admit both endings. *-ovi* tends to be favored for viriles (male human referents), with rare but notable exceptions (*člověk, člověku* ‘person’, *Bůh, Bohu* ‘God’), and can be used for most animals. In concatenations of titles and names, the last word will have *-ovi*, but all others will have *-u*: *panu doktoru Janu Novákovi* ‘Mr. Dr. Jan Novák’.

Lsg: 90% of inanimate masculine hard stem nouns have *-u*, less than 1% have *-e/ě*, and about 9% permit both endings (Janda 1996: 148-9). Where *-e/ě* appears it conditions Type 1 alternations for velars and *r*, but stems ending in these consonants strongly prefer *-u*. More than half of the stems that permit both desinences end in *-s*, and others end in *-z, -k, -l, -r, -ch, or -n*. According to Bermel (1993), among nouns that permit both desinences *-e/ě* is typical in the expression of familiar, predictable concrete locations, whereas *-u* is the default for all other uses.

Vsg: the *-e* desinence conditions the Type 2 alternation for stems ending in *tr* and *c*: *mistr, mistře!* ‘master’, *otec, otče!* ‘father’. Velar stems have *-u* instead (*kluk, kluku!* ‘boy’), thus avoiding Type 2 alternation (but note: *Bůh, Bože!* ‘God’; *člověk, člověče!* ‘person’).

Npl: *-i* is by far the most common ending for animates and conditions the Type 1 alternation: *student, studenti* ‘student’; *Polák, Poláci* ‘Pole’. The endings *-é -ové* are used primarily with certain viriles: *soused, sousedé* ‘neighbor’; *syn, synové* ‘son’.

Lpl: in addition to *-ech*, the Lpl has the variants *-ích* (used with some stems ending in velars, labials, *-s, -z, and -l*) and *-ách* (used with some stems ending in velars). With velars *-ích* conditions the Type 1 alternation, although the tendency is to replace *-ích* with *-ách*, which obviates alternation. Compare the following Nsg and Lpl forms: *práh, prázích* ‘threshold’; *les, lesích* ‘forest’; *hotel, hotelích* ‘hotel’; *plech, plechách* ‘metal plate’.

## Soft stems

Inanimate: <i>koš</i> ‘basket’		
	sg	pl
N	<i>koš</i>	<i>koše</i>
G	<i>koše</i>	<i>košů</i>
D	<i>koši</i>	<i>košům</i>
A	<i>koš</i>	<i>koše</i>
V	<i>koši</i>	
L	<i>koši</i>	<i>koších</i>
I	<i>košem</i>	<i>koši</i>

Animate: <i>malíř</i> ‘painter’		
	sg	pl
N	<i>malíř</i>	<i>malíři</i>
G	<i>malíře</i>	<i>malířů</i>
D	<i>malířovi/-i</i>	<i>malířům</i>
A	<i>malíře</i>	<i>malíře</i>
V	<i>malíři</i>	
L	<i>malířovi/-i</i>	<i>malířích</i>
I	<i>malířem</i>	<i>malíři</i>

DLsg: the distribution of *-ovi* vs. *-i* is similar to that of *-ovi* vs. *-u* in the animate hard stems, although *-i* is somewhat more frequent in the soft paradigm than *-u* is in the hard paradigm.

Lpl: some nouns in this paradigm have the desinence *-ech*: *cíl, cílech* ‘goal’.

## Stems alternating between hard and soft

<i>kotel</i> ‘cauldron’		
	sg	pl
N	<i>kotel</i>	<i>kotle/-y</i>
G	<i>kotlu/-e</i>	<i>kotlů</i>
D	<i>kotlu/-i</i>	<i>kotlům</i>
A	<i>kotel</i>	<i>kotle/-y</i>
V	<i>kotli</i>	
L	<i>kotlu/-i</i>	<i>kotlech/-ích</i>
I	<i>kotlem</i>	<i>kotli/-y</i>

Nearly all stems of this type end in *l* or *n* (*řemen* ‘strap’, *pramen* ‘source’, *kámen* ‘stone’); one ends in *t* (*loket* ‘elbow’).

## Special types

There are two masculine paradigms with a vocalic desinence in the Nsg: the hard *-a* paradigm and the soft *-e* paradigm. Both are exclusively virile (designate male humans) and therefore animate.



<i>-a virile: přednosta</i> ‘chief, head’		
	sg	pl
N	<i>přednosta</i>	<i>přednostové</i>
G	<i>přednosty</i>	<i>přednostů</i>
D	<i>přednostovi</i>	<i>přednostům</i>
A	<i>přednostu</i>	<i>přednosty</i>
V	<i>přednosto</i>	
L	<i>přednostovi</i>	<i>přednostech</i>
I	<i>přednostou</i>	<i>přednosty</i>

Aside from the masculine DLsg *-ovi*, this paradigm has feminine endings in the singular, but masculine endings in the plural.

Gsg, Apl, and Ipl: some stems in this paradigm end in consonant letters that do not combine with *y*; these forms are then spelled with *i*, as in nicknames such as *Míša*, *Míši* ‘Mike’.

Npl: although most nouns in this paradigm use *-ové*, those ending in *-ita* and *-ista* use *-é* (*husita*, *husité* ‘Hussite’, *houslista*, *houslisté* ‘violinist’).

Lpl: stems ending in a velar will have *-ích* and the concomitant Type 1 alternation: *sluha*, *sluzích* ‘servant’.

<i>-e virile: zachránce</i> ‘savior’		
	sg	pl
N	<i>zachránce</i>	<i>zachránci</i>
G	<i>zachránce</i>	<i>zachránců</i>
D	<i>zachráncovi/-i</i>	<i>zachráncům</i>
A	<i>zachránce</i>	<i>zachránce</i>
V	<i>zachránce</i>	
L	<i>zachráncovi/-i</i>	<i>zachráncích</i>
I	<i>zachránцем</i>	<i>zachránci</i>

DLsg: variation here parallels that of soft stem animate nouns.

Npl: some nouns also admit *-ové* (*soudce*, *soudcil-ové* ‘judge’).

Although a few borrowings are indeclinable (*atašé* ‘attaché’, *zebu* ‘zebu’, *tangens* ‘tangent’), most foreign words decline even if their stems are incongruous with the stem shape of native masculine nouns. Nouns ending in a vowel other than *i/y* will drop that vowel in all forms other than the Nsg (and Asg for inanimates) and treat the preceding consonant as stem final; *maestro* thus has a stem of *maestr-* to which desinences are added: GAsg *maestra*, DLsg *maestroví*, Vsg *maestro*, Isg *maestrem*, Npl *maestrové*, Gpl *maestrů*, Dpl *maestrům*, AIpl *maestry*, Lpl *maestrech*. Following a similar strategy, foreign nouns ending in *-us*, *-es*, and *-os* usually drop those segments for all other forms in the paradigm (NAsg *komunismus*, GDLsg *komunismu*, Vsg *komunisme*, Isg *komunismem*; NAsg *hádes*, GDLsg *hádu*, Isg *hádem*; NAsg *kosmos*, GDLsg *kosmu*, Isg *kosmem*). Foreign nouns and names ending in *i/y* (*kuli* ‘coolie’, *pony* ‘pony’, *Billy*) have a mixed declension, with adjective type endings (with short vowels) in the singular (GAsg *kuliho*, Dsg *kulimu*, LIsg *kulim*), but primarily noun-type endings in the plural (Npl *kuliové*, Gpl *kuliů*, Dpl *kuliům*, Apl *kulie*, Lpl *kuliech/-ích/-ch*, Ipl *kulii/-mi*).

### 2.1.1.2 Neuter paradigms

Aside from the nominative and accusative forms, the neuter paradigms have the same endings as masculine paradigms.

*Hard stems*

<i>město</i> ‘city’		
	sg	pl
N	<i>město</i>	<i>města</i>
G	<i>města</i>	<i>měst</i>
D	<i>městu</i>	<i>městům</i>
A	<i>město</i>	<i>města</i>
V	<i>město</i>	
L	<i>městě/-u</i>	<i>městech</i>
I	<i>městem</i>	<i>městy</i>

Nsg: a few nouns with stems ending in *-en* have a bookish variant Nsg form with an abbreviated stem: *břemeno/břímě* ‘burden’; these nouns also have alternate endings Gsg *břemeno/břemene*, Dsg *břemenu/břemeni*, and Lsg *břemenu/břemeni/břemeně* (similar to the masculine *kotel* type above).

Lsg: many nouns use only *-elě* (which conditions Type 1 alternations): *okno, okně* ‘window’; some only *-u* (stems ending in velars always use *-u*): *středisko, středisku* ‘center’.

Lpl: as in masculine nouns, *-ích* can appear after velars (with Type 1 alternations), and is frequently replaced by *-ách*.

Nouns referring to paired body parts, such as *rameno/rámě* ‘shoulder’, *koleno* ‘knee’, and *prsa* ‘chest, breasts’ have GLpl forms *ramenou/ramen, kolenou/kolen, and prsou*.

*lýtka* ‘calf (leg)’ and *bedro* ‘hip’ and some plural-only nouns (*vrátka* ‘gate’) admit both neuter and feminine forms in the plural.

*Soft stems*

There are two types of neuter soft stems. One type involves a very small number of nouns with a paradigm of: NGAVsg/NApl *moře* ‘sea’, DLsg/Ipl *moři*, Isg *mořem*, Gpl *moří*, Dpl *mořím*, Lpl *mořích*. The other type involves a large number of nouns all of which are derived with *-išťe* and designate places, such as: NGAVsg/NApl *letišťe* ‘airport’, DLsg/Ipl *letišti*, Isg *letišťem*, Gpl *letišťi*, Dpl *letišťím*, Lpl *letišťích*.

*Special types*

-ěť/-at- type: <i>slůně</i> ‘baby elephant’		
	sg	pl
N	<i>slůně</i>	<i>slůňata</i>
G	<i>slůněte</i>	<i>slůňat</i>
D	<i>slůněti</i>	<i>slůňatům</i>
A	<i>slůně</i>	<i>slůňata</i>
V	<i>slůně</i>	
L	<i>slůněti</i>	<i>slůňatech</i>
I	<i>slůnětem</i>	<i>slůňaty</i>

The *-ěť/-at-* type is primarily associated with names of offspring (*štěně* ‘puppy’, *nemluvně* ‘infant’), although this paradigm is used for some inanimates (*koště* ‘broom’) and at least one virile (*kníže* ‘prince’).

-í type: <i>nábřeží</i> ‘waterfont’		
	sg	pl
N	<i>nábřeží</i>	<i>nábřeží</i>
G	<i>nábřeží</i>	<i>nábřeží</i>
D	<i>nábřeží</i>	<i>nábřeží<b>m</b></i>
A	<i>nábřeží</i>	<i>nábřeží</i>
V	<i>nábřeží</i>	
L	<i>nábřeží</i>	<i>nábřeží<b>ch</b></i>
I	<i>nábřeží<b>m</b></i>	<i>nábřeží<b>mi</b></i>

The *-í* type paradigm includes many deverbal nouns (*placení* ‘paying’) and is otherwise often associated with collectives (*křoví* ‘bushes’) and nouns with abstract meaning (*zdraví* ‘health’); a particularly common source of neuter *-í* nouns are prepositional phrases (the head noun here, *nábřeží* is derived from the prepositional phrase *na břehu* ‘on the bank’).

Latin and Greek borrowings into the Czech neuter continue some aspects of their original declensions in Czech. Nouns ending in *-o*, *-on*, and *-um* drop those final segments in all forms but the NAsg and follow the standard hard declension (but those with a new “stem” ending in a vowel have soft endings in the plural oblique cases): NAVsg *enklitikon*, Gsg/NApl *enklitika*, DLsg *enklitiku*, Isg *enklitikem*, Gpl *enklitik*, Dpl *enklitikům*, Lpl *enklitikách*, Ipl *enklitiky*; NAVsg *rádio*, Gsg/NApl *rádia*, DLsg *rádiu*, Isg *rádiem*, Gpl *rádií*, Dpl *rádiím*, Lpl *rádiích*, Ipl *rádií*; NAVsg *muzeum*, Gsg/NApl *muzea*, DLsg *muzeu*, Isg *muzeem*, Gpl *muzeí*, Dpl *muzeím*, Lpl *muzeích*, Ipl *muzei*. Neuter nouns ending in *-ma* add *t* to form their stem: NAVsg *drama*, GDLsg *dramatu*, Isg *dramatem*, NApl *dramata*, Gpl *dramat*, Dpl *dramatům*, Lpl *dramatech*, Ipl *dramaty*. Some neuter borrowings do not decline: *klišé*, *taxi*, *tabu*.

### 2.1.1.3 Feminine paradigms

#### *Hard stems*

<i>žena</i> ‘woman’		
	sg	pl
N	<i>žena</i>	<i>ženy</i>
G	<i>ženy</i>	<i>žen</i>
D	<i>ženě</i>	<i>ženám</i>
A	<i>ženu</i>	<i>ženy</i>
V	<i>ženo</i>	
L	<i>ženě</i>	<i>ženách</i>
I	<i>ženou</i>	<i>ženami</i>

DLsg: the *-e/ě* ending conditions the Type 1 alternation.

*ruka* ‘arm/hand’ has deviant NApl *ruce* and shares with *noha* ‘leg’ special oblique plural forms: GLpl *rukou*, *nohou* (but note also variants Gpl *noh* and Lpl *rukách*, *nohách*); Ipl *rukama*, *nohama*.

## Soft stems

růže ‘rose’		
	sg	pl
N	<i>růže</i>	<i>růže</i>
G	<i>růže</i>	<i>růží</i>
D	<i>růži</i>	<i>růžím</i>
A	<i>růži</i>	<i>růže</i>
V	<i>růže</i>	
L	<i>růži</i>	<i>růžích</i>
I	<i>růží</i>	<i>růžemi</i>

Gpl: as a rule, stems ending in *-ic* have a zero ending instead of *-í*: *ulice, ulic* ‘street’. Variation between zero and *-í* is not uncommon, particularly among nouns in *-yně*; *přítelkyně* ‘girlfriend’ admits both Gpl forms: *přítelkyně/přítelkyní*.

## Feminine nouns ending in a consonant

There are two paradigms of feminine nouns with a zero ending in the Nsg; all such nouns end in a historically soft consonant.

Nsg in zero, *-e/ě* type: *dlaň* ‘palm of hand’

	sg	pl
N	<i>dlaň</i>	<i>dlaně</i>
G	<i>dlaně</i>	<i>dlaní</i>
D	<i>dlaní</i>	<i>dlaním</i>
A	<i>dlaň</i>	<i>dlaně</i>
V	<i>dlaní</i>	
L	<i>dlaní</i>	<i>dlaních</i>
I	<i>dlaní</i>	<i>dlaněmi</i>

Nsg in zero, *-i* type: *kost* ‘bone’

	sg	pl
N	<i>kost</i>	<i>kosti</i>
G	<i>kosti</i>	<i>kostí</i>
D	<i>kosti</i>	<i>kostem</i>
A	<i>kost</i>	<i>kosti</i>
V	<i>kosti</i>	
L	<i>kosti</i>	<i>kostech</i>
I	<i>kostí</i>	<i>kostmi</i>

The *-e/ě* type and *-i* type paradigms are converging, resulting in frequent variations for words of both paradigms in the desinences that do not match, cf. *lod’* ‘boat’, which admits all of the following forms Gsg *lodi/-ě*, NApl *lodi/-ě*, Ipl *loděmi/lod’ mi*.

*paní* ‘Mrs.’ is indeclinable in the singular and has the following plural forms: NGApl *paní*, Dpl *paním*, Lpl *paních*, Ipl *paními*.

Borrowed words ending in a vowel or *j + a* follow a mixed hard/soft declension, e.g.: Nsg *idea*, Gsg *idey/-je*, DLsg *ideji*, Asg *ideu*, Vsg *ideo*, Isg *ideou/-jí*, NApl *idey/-je*, Gpl *idejí*, Dpl *ideám/-jím*, Lpl *ideách/-jích*, Ipl *iedeami/-jemi*. There are a few borrowed feminine indeclinable nouns: *whisky, party*.

#### 2.1.1.4 Nouns of variable or indeterminate gender

Three neuter nouns do not have neuter endings in the plural:

*dítě* ‘child’: NAVsg *dítě*, Gsg *dítěte*, DLsg *dítěti*, Isg *dítětem*, NApl *děti*, Gpl *dětí*, Dpl *dětem*, Lpl *dětech*, Ipl *děti*

*oko* ‘eye’ and *ucho* ‘ear’: both have a neuter hard stem singular (with Lsg *-u*) and the following plural: NApl *oči uši*, Gpl *očí uší*, Dpl *očím uším*, Ipl *očima ušima*.

Three pluralia tantum nouns naming holiday seasons, *letnice* ‘Whitsunday’, *vánoce* ‘Christmas’, and *velikonoce* ‘Easter’, are listed in dictionaries as feminine pluralia tantum, although they have Dpl *-ům*, which is characteristic of masculine and neuter paradigms: NApl *vánoce*, Gpl *vánoc*, Dpl *vánocům*, Lpl *vánocích*, Ipl *vánocemi*.

Although the vast majority of names for people and animals have separate feminine and masculine forms, there are some words that vary in gender and paradigm depending upon the given referent: *choť* ‘spouse’ declines as a soft stem masculine animate when referring to a husband, but as a feminine type ending in a consonant when referring to a wife; *nešika* ‘clumsy person’ is an *-a* virile in reference to a male, but a hard stem feminine in reference to a female. Most other common gender words, such as *člověk* ‘person’ (masculine hard stem animate) and *osoba* ‘person’ (hard stem feminine) retain their paradigm and syntactic gender no matter whom they refer to. *Rukojmí* ‘hostage’ can be a substantivized adjective or an *-í* type neuter (Gsg *rukojmího/-í*). A few inanimate nouns have more than one paradigm: ‘potato’ exists as both *brambor* (hard stem masculine) and *brambora* (hard stem feminine), and *esej* ‘essay’ can be declined as either masculine or feminine.

#### 2.1.2 Adjectival morphology

Adjectives are declined to match the gender, case, and number of the nouns they modify. Participles are declined like adjectives. The vast majority of adjectives occur only long, although short forms do exist for a few common adjectives and are the norm for predicative past passive participles. Adjectives can be qualitative (describing a quality, like *chytrý* ‘smart’, *tvrdý* ‘hard’) or relational (describing a relationship to something, like *Pražský* ‘Prague’, as in *Pražský hrad* ‘Prague Castle’, or *místní* ‘local’, as in *místní správa* ‘local government’). Comparative and superlative forms and adverbs can be formed from adjectival stems; qualitative adjectives are more likely to have these forms than are relational adjectives.

##### 2.1.2.1 Long form adjectives

Like nouns, adjectives have both hard and soft stem paradigms. Soft stem adjectives are primarily relational adjectives in *-ní* (*večerní* ‘evening’), where softness is imposed by the suffix. Unlike nouns, adjectives do not have vocative case forms; when an adjective appears with a noun in the vocative, the adjective is in the nominative. In combination with the Ipl of feminine and variable gender nouns having a nominal desinence in *-ma*, the ending for demonstratives and adjectives is also *-ma* rather than the customary *-mi*: *těma špinavýma rukama* ‘with those dirty hands’. There are a few foreign borrowings that do not decline, such as *fajn* ‘fine’, but these are considered colloquial, and can have nativized declinable variants, such as *fajnový* ‘fine’.

*Hard stems*

		<i>druhý</i> ‘second; other’					
		singular			plural		
		masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine	neuter
N	<i>druhý</i>	<i>druhá</i>	<i>druhé</i>	<i>druhé</i>	<i>druhé</i>	<i>druhé</i>	<i>druhá</i>
(anim:)					<i>druzí</i>		
G	<i>druhého</i>	<i>druhé</i>	<i>druhého</i>	<i>druhých</i>			
D	<i>druhému</i>	<i>druhé</i>	<i>druhému</i>	<i>druhým</i>			
A	<i>druhý</i>	<i>druhou</i>	<i>druhé</i>	<i>druhé</i>	<i>druhé</i>		<i>druhá</i>
(anim:)	<i>druhého</i>						
L	<i>druhém</i>	<i>druhé</i>	<i>druhém</i>	<i>druhých</i>			
I	<i>druhým</i>	<i>druhou</i>	<i>druhým</i>	<i>druhými</i>			

The Nplmasc animate conditions Type 1 alternations.

*Soft stems*

		<i>první</i> ‘first’		
		singular		plural
		masculine & neuter	feminine	(all genders)
N	<i>první</i>	<i>první</i>	<i>první</i>	<i>první</i>
G	<i>prvního</i>	<i>první</i>	<i>první</i>	<i>prvních</i>
D	<i>prvnímu</i>	<i>první</i>	<i>první</i>	<i>prvním</i>
A	<i>první</i>	<i>první</i>	<i>první</i>	<i>první</i>
(anim:)	<i>prvního</i>			
L	<i>prvním</i>	<i>první</i>	<i>první</i>	<i>prvních</i>
I	<i>prvním</i>	<i>první</i>	<i>první</i>	<i>prvními</i>

Possessive-relational adjectives are formed from nouns designating animals and God, and all are soft stem adjectives: *Bůh* ‘God’, *Boží* ‘God’s’; *ryba* ‘fish’, *rybí* ‘a fish’s’.

## 2.1.2.2 Short form adjectives and possessive adjectives

*Short form adjectives*

Short form adjectives are built from the same stems as long form adjectives but have nominal instead of adjectival endings. Any short forms that do exist in Czech are used only predicatively. There is only one adjective with only short forms: *rád* ‘glad’. Only a few other adjectives permit short forms and these are used only predicatively in the nominative. For passive participles, as stated above, short forms are the norm in the predicate: *dopis byl napsán* ‘the letter was written’ vs. *napsaný dopis* ‘the written letter’.

		<i>nemocný</i> ‘ill’					
		singular short forms			plural short forms		
		masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine	neuter
N	<i>nemocen</i>	<i>nemocna</i>	<i>nemocno</i>	<i>nemocny</i>	<i>nemocny</i>	<i>nemocna</i>	
(anim:)					<i>nemocni</i>		

As with long form adjectives, the Npl masculine animate ending triggers the Type 1 alternation.

*Possessive adjectives*

Possessive adjectives formed from names of human males (with suffix *-ův*) and females (with suffix *-in*) have a distinct paradigm that mixes short and long types:

<i>bratrův</i> ‘brother’s’						
	singular			plural		
	masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine	neuter
N (anim:)	<i>bratrův</i>	<i>bratrova</i>	<i>bratrovo</i>	<i>bratrovy</i> <i>bratrovi</i>	<i>bratrovy</i>	<i>bratrova</i>
G	<i>bratrova</i>	<i>bratrovy</i>	<i>bratrova</i>	<i>bratrových</i>		
D	<i>bratrovu</i>	<i>bratrově</i>	<i>bratrovu</i>	<i>bratrovým</i>		
A (anim:)	<i>bratrův</i>	<i>bratrovu</i>	<i>bratrovo</i>	<i>bratrovy</i>	<i>bratrovy</i>	<i>bratrova</i>
L	<i>bratrově/</i> <b>-u</b>	<i>bratrově</i>	<i>bratrově/</i> -	<i>bratrových</i>		
I	<i>bratrovým</i>	<i>bratrovou</i>	<i>bratrovým</i>	<i>bratrovými</i>		

### 2.1.2.3 Comparatives and superlatives

#### *Comparative adjectives*

All comparative adjectives end in *-ší* and, hence, decline like soft stem adjectives. The regular formant for deriving comparatives from adjectival stems is *-ější/-ejší*, which conditions the Type 2 alternation for velars, but the Type 1 alternation of all other stem final consonants:

adjective	gloss	comparative	adjective	gloss	comparative
<i>chytrý</i>	‘clever’	<i>chytřejší</i>	<i>divoký</i>	‘wild’	<i>divočejší</i>
<i>logický</i>	‘logical’	<i>logičtějši</i>	<i>jistý</i>	‘certain’	<i>jistějši</i>
<i>blbý</i>	‘stupid’	<i>blbějši</i>	<i>inteligentní</i>	‘intelligent’	<i>inteligentnějši</i>

Two adjectives have a vowel alternation in the stem: *bílý* ‘white’ *bělejší*, *svatý* ‘holy’ *světější*.

Some adjectives form the comparative with the formant *-ší*, which often (though not always) conditions Type 2 alternations; some adjectives can employ both *-ější/-ejší* and *-ší*. Adjectives with stems ending in *-k* or *-ok* typically drop those segments, and occasionally stem-final *-n* is lost as well. Stem vowels in the comparatives are always short regardless of length in the positive form:

adjective	gloss	comparative	adjective	gloss	comparative
<i>snadný</i>	‘easy’	<i>snazší/</i> <i>snadnějši</i>	<i>mladý</i>	‘young’	<i>mladší</i>
<i>suchý</i>	‘dry’	<i>sušší</i>	<i>čistý</i>	‘clean’	<i>čist(ě)jší</i>
<i>krotký</i>	‘tame’	<i>krotší/</i> <i>krotčejší</i>	<i>krátký</i>	‘short’	<i>kratší</i>
<i>hluboký</i>	‘deep’	<i>hlubší</i>	<i>blízký</i>	‘near’	<i>bližší</i>

Some stems ending in *-k* drop the final consonant and use the formant *-čí*:

adjective	gloss	comparative	adjective	gloss	comparative
<i>křehký</i>	‘fragile’	<i>křehčí/</i> <i>křehčejší</i>	<i>hebký</i>	‘supple’	<i>hebčí/</i> <i>hebčejší</i>

A number of common adjectives have irregular or suppletive comparative forms:

adjective	gloss	comparative	adjective	gloss	comparative
<i>daleký</i>	‘far’	<i>další</i> ‘next’	<i>dlouhý</i>	‘long’	<i>delší</i>

<i>dobrý</i>	‘good’	<i>lepší</i>		<i>špatný</i>	‘bad’	<i>horší</i>
<i>vel(i)ký</i>	‘big’	<i>větší</i>		<i>malý</i>	‘small’	<i>menší</i>

Adjectives that do not commonly form comparatives (particularly relational adjectives) frequently resort to an analytic paraphrase using *více* ‘more’: *dřevěný* ‘wooden’ would thus yield the comparative *více dřevěný*.

#### *Superlative adjectives*

All superlative adjectives are created by adding the prefix *nej-* to the comparative form: *nejchytřejší* ‘cleverest’, *nejsnazší* / *nejsnadnějši* ‘easiest’, *nejkřehčí* / *nejkřehčejši* ‘most fragile’, *nejhorší* ‘worst’, *nejvíce dřevěný* ‘most wooden’. An alternative superlative prefix *sebe-* is less frequent and more emphatic: *sebelepší* ‘best’, *sebemenší* ‘smallest’.

#### 2.1.2.4 Deadjectival adverbs

##### *Adverbs formed from adjectives*

Deadjectival adverbs can be formed from most qualitative adjectives and most of these adverbs admit comparative forms as well.

Adjectives ending in *-ský*, *-cký*, and *-zký* form the adverb in *-y*: *-sky* and *-cky* can be used with adjectives naming languages to describe language use: *český* ‘Czech’ yields *česky* ‘in a Czech way’, as in *Mluvím česky* ‘I speak Czech’.

The majority of adverbs formed from adjectives are formed with *-e/ě* (which conditions Type 1 alternations): *divoký* ‘wild’ yields *divoce*, *blbý* ‘stupid’, yields *blbě*, and *dlouhý* ‘long’ yields *dlouze*, as in *Tato samohláska se vyslovuje dlouze* ‘That vowel is pronounced long’.

##### *Comparative adverbs*

Only adverbs formed from adjectives have comparative forms, and most of these are created with the *-eji/-ěji* formant. In the case of adjectival stems ending in a velar, this produces Type 2 alternations; for other stems the Type 1 alternation triggered in the *-e/ě* adverbial form remains:

adjective	gloss	adverb	comparative
<i>divoký</i>	‘wild’	<i>divoce</i>	<i>divočeji</i>
<i>logický</i>	‘logical’	<i>logicky</i>	<i>logičtěji</i>
<i>suchý</i>	‘dry’	<i>suše</i>	<i>sušeji</i>
<i>blbý</i>	‘stupid’	<i>blbě</i>	<i>blběji</i>

Alternative comparative endings are *-e* (conditioning Type 2 alternations) and zero; some adverbs admit all three formants, and many admit two. Note that in comparative adverbs in *-e* the stem vowel is always long, regardless of the length in the base adjective.

adjective	gloss	adverb	comparatives
<i>snadný</i>	‘easy’	<i>snadně/snadno</i>	<i>snadněji, snáze, snáz</i>
<i>hluboký</i>	‘deep’	<i>hluboce</i>	<i>hlouběji, hloub</i>
<i>úzký</i>	‘narrow’	<i>úzce</i>	<i>úže, úžeji</i>
<i>drahý</i>	‘dear’	<i>draze</i>	<i>dráže, dráž</i>

The irregular comparative adverbs correspond to the adjectives with irregular comparative formations:



adjective	gloss	adverbs	comparatives
<i>daleký</i>	‘far’	<i>dalece, daleko</i>	<i>dále, dál</i>
<i>dlouhý</i>	‘long’	<i>dlouze, dlouho</i>	<i>déle</i>
<i>dobrý</i>	‘good’	<i>dobře</i>	<i>lépe, líp</i>
<i>špatný</i>	‘bad’	<i>špatně</i>	<i>hůře, hůř</i>
<i>vel(i)ký</i>	‘big’	<i>velice, mnoho</i>	<i>více, víc</i>
<i>malý</i>	‘small’	<i>málo</i>	<i>méně, míň</i>

### Superlative adverbs

Like adjectives, adverbs form the superlative degree by prefixing comparative forms with *nej-* and occasionally *sebe-*: *nejlogičtěji* ‘most logically’, *nejblběji* ‘most stupidly’, *nejhlouběji/nejhloub* ‘most deeply’, *nejlépe/nejlíp, sebelépe* ‘best’, *nejméně* ‘least’. Adverbs that do not form comparatives and superlatives can achieve these degrees by means of paraphrase with *více* ‘more’ and *nejvíce* ‘most’ or *méně* ‘less’ and *nejméně* ‘least’.

### 2.1.3 Pronominal morphology

Rather than constituting an independent declensional type, Czech pronouns use endings from both noun and adjective paradigms, and often can be said to have a mixed declensional type.

#### Personal, reflexive, and interrogative pronouns

All pronouns are inflected for case. Personal pronouns distinguish person and number and, in the third person, gender as well. Personal and reflexive pronouns can occur as enclitics, and the singular and reflexive pronouns have for the genitive, dative, and accusative cases two forms, a “long” one restricted to non-enclitic uses, and a “short” stressless enclitic one.

#### First person

	singular		plural
	“long” non-enclitic	“short” enclitic	
N		<i>já</i>	<i>my</i>
G	<i>mne</i>	<i>mě</i>	<i>nás</i>
D	<i>mně</i>	<i>mi</i>	<i>nám</i>
A	<i>mne</i>	<i>mě</i>	<i>nás</i>
L		<i>mně</i>	<i>nás</i>
I		<i>mnou</i>	<i>námi</i>

#### Second person

	singular		plural
	“long” non-enclitic	“short” enclitic	
N		<i>ty</i>	<i>vy</i>
G	<i>tebe</i>	<i>tě</i>	<i>vás</i>
D	<i>tobě</i>	<i>ti</i>	<i>vám</i>
A	<i>tebe</i>	<i>tě</i>	<i>vás</i>
L		<i>tobě</i>	<i>vás</i>
I		<i>tebou</i>	<i>vámi</i>

*Ty* and its forms are used only in addressing a single intimate friend, relation, or a child; *vy* is used both for singular as well as for plural formal address.

## Third person

	masculine		singular neuter		feminine	plural
	“long”	“short”	“long”	“short”		
N	<i>on</i>		<i>ono</i>		<i>ona</i>	<i>oni, ony, ona</i>
G	<i>jeho</i>	<i>ho</i>	<i>jeho</i>	<i>ho</i>	<i>jí</i>	<i>jích</i>
D	<i>jemu</i>	<i>mu</i>	<i>jemu</i>	<i>mu</i>	<i>jí</i>	<i>jím</i>
A	<i>jeho, jej</i>	<i>jej, ho, -ň</i>	<i>je</i>		<i>jí</i>	<i>je</i>
L	<i>něm</i>		<i>něm</i>		<i>ní</i>	<i>nich</i>
I	<i>jím</i>		<i>jím</i>		<i>jí</i>	<i>jimi</i>

The initial *j-* of the genitive, dative, accusative, and instrumental is replaced by *n-* ([ɲ]) whenever a pronoun is preceded by a preposition; because the locative case appears only with prepositions, pronouns are cited only in their *n-* forms. Masculine accusative *jej* can serve in both enclitic and non-enclitic roles; *-ň* is uncommon and restricted only to position after prepositions ending in a vowel: *naň* ‘onto him/it’. In the plural, gender is distinguished only in the nominative case: *oni* masculine animate, *ony* masculine inanimate + feminine, *ona* neuter.

## Reflexive pronoun

	“long”	“short”
G	<i>sebe</i>	<i>sebe</i>
D	<i>sobě</i>	<i>si</i>
A	<i>sebe</i>	<i>se</i>
L	<i>sobě</i>	<i>sobě</i>
I	<i>sebou</i>	<i>sebou</i>

Because the reflexive pronoun typically refers to a nominative subject, it does not have a nominative (or vocative) form.

Interrogative pronouns: *kdo* ‘who’ and *co* ‘what’

N	<i>kdo</i>	<i>co</i>
G	<i>koho</i>	<i>čeho</i>
D	<i>komu</i>	<i>čemu</i>
A	<i>koho</i>	<i>co, -č</i>
L	<i>kom</i>	<i>čem</i>
I	<i>kým</i>	<i>čím</i>

Like *-ň, -č* appears only after prepositions ending in a vowel: *Není zač* ‘Don’t mention it (lit: Not for what)’. Syntactically *kdo* is always masculine animate singular and *co* is neuter singular, regardless of the gender and number of actual referents.

*Possessive pronouns*

Possessives exist for all persons, numbers, and genders represented by personal pronouns and the personal interrogative. *Můj* ‘my’ and *tvůj* ‘thy, your’ share one declension type, and *náš* ‘our’ and *váš* ‘your’ share another declension type. *Jeho* ‘his/its’ and *jejich* ‘their’ are indeclinable. *Její* ‘her’ and *čí* ‘whose’ decline like soft stem adjectives.

<i>můj</i> ‘my’ ( <i>tvůj</i> ‘thy, your’ has the same endings)						
		singular			plural	
	masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine	neuter
N (anim:)	<i>můj</i>	<i>má, moje</i>	<i>mé, moje</i>	<i>mé, moje</i> <i>mí, moji</i>	<i>mé, moje</i>	<i>má, moje</i>
G	<i>mého</i>	<i>mé</i>	<i>mého</i>		<i>mých</i>	
D	<i>mému</i>	<i>mé</i>	<i>mému</i>		<i>mým</i>	
A (anim:)	<i>můj</i> <i>mého</i>	<i>mou, moji</i>	<i>mé, moje</i>	<i>mé, moje</i>	<i>mé, moje</i>	<i>má, moje</i>
L	<i>mém</i>	<i>mé</i>	<i>mém</i>		<i>mých</i>	
I	<i>mým</i>	<i>mou</i>	<i>mým</i>		<i>mými</i>	

In the nominative and accusative cases for feminine and neuter in the singular and all genders in the plural, there are variant contracted (consisting of a single long vowel) and uncontracted (consisting of *oj* + short vowel) forms; these forms are in free variation, although the contracted forms are more frequent in writing and uncontracted ones are encountered more often in speech. Note the length of the root vowel *ů* in the masculine singular *můj*, *tvůj*, which is short *o* in all other uncontracted forms.

<i>naš</i> ‘our’ ( <i>váš</i> ‘your’ has the same declension)						
		singular			plural	
	masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine	neuter
N (anim:)	<i>naš</i>	<i>naše</i>	<i>naše</i>	<i>naše</i> <i>naši</i>	<i>naše</i>	<i>naše</i>
G	<i>našeho</i>	<i>naši</i>	<i>našeho</i>		<i>našich</i>	
D	<i>našemu</i>	<i>naši</i>	<i>našemu</i>		<i>našim</i>	
A (anim:)	<i>naš</i> <i>našeho</i>	<i>naši</i>	<i>naše</i>		<i>naše</i>	
L	<i>našem</i>	<i>naši</i>	<i>našem</i>		<i>našich</i>	
I	<i>naším</i>	<i>naši</i>	<i>naším</i>		<i>našimi</i>	

Note that *naš*, *váš* as well as the following demonstrative and other pronouns (and numerals *jeden* ‘one’ and *všechen* ‘all’) show a mixed declensional type, with both short (for direct cases) and long (for oblique cases) endings. This type has nominal endings for the nominative and accusative cases (with the exception of the masculine animate A sg, which follows the genitive), and adjectival endings for the remaining cases. Additionally it is characteristic that endings for masculine/neuter singular NGDAL, feminine singular NA, and all plural cases use short vowels; but endings for masculine/neuter singular I and feminine singular GDLI follow the long adjectival pattern. Note also the length of the root vowel in masculine singular N *naš*, *váš*, which is short in all other forms (*sám* ‘oneself’, presented below, shows the same shortening).

*Demonstrative pronoun*

<i>ten</i> ‘this, that, the’						
	singular			plural		
	masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine	neuter
N (anim:)	<b>ten</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>to</b>	<b>ty</b> <b>ti</b>	<b>ty</b>	<b>ta</b>
G	<b>toho</b>	<b>té</b>	<b>toho</b>		<b>těch</b>	
D	<b>tomu</b>	<b>té</b>	<b>tomu</b>		<b>těm</b>	
A (anim:)	<b>ten</b> <b>toho</b>	<b>tu</b>	<b>to</b>	<b>ty</b>	<b>ty</b>	<b>ta</b>
L	<b>tom</b>	<b>té</b>	<b>tom</b>		<b>těch</b>	
I	<b>tím</b>	<b>tou</b>	<b>tím</b>		<b>těmi</b>	

*Ten* participates in various compounds with affixed *-to* ‘here’, *tam-* ‘there’, *-hle* ‘look’ (emphatic), in which *ten* is declined as expected, among them: *tento* ‘this (...here)’, *tamten* ‘that (...there)’, *tenhle* ‘this/that’, *tamhleten* ‘that (there emphatic)’. *Ten* can also be reduplicated (in which case it is declined in both positions), as in *tenhleten* ‘this/that (emphatic)’.

*Relative and other pronouns*

*Jenž* is a bookish relative pronoun which is declined like *náš* with the final *-ž* appearing after the desinences. The adjective *který* ‘which, that, who’ is usually used in place of *jenž*. *Sám* ‘oneself’ is declined as a hard stem adjective (with a stem of *sam-*) in all oblique cases and has the following endings in the nominative and accusative:

	singular			plural		
	masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine	neuter
N (anim:)	<b>sám</b>	<b>sama</b>	<b>samo</b>	<b>samy</b> <b>sami</b>	<b>samy</b>	<b>sama</b>
A (anim:)	<b>sám</b> <b>sama/</b> <b>-ého</b>	<b>samu</b>	<b>samo</b>	<b>samy</b>	<b>samy</b>	<b>sama</b>

*Všechn* ‘all’ has a larger and unique paradigm (note the *e > i* vowel shift in the Nplmasc animate):

	singular			plural		
	masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine	neuter
N (anim:)	<b>všechn</b>	<b>všechna</b>	<b>všechno/</b> <b>vše</b>	<b>všechny</b> <b>všichni</b>	<b>všechny</b>	<b>všechna</b>
G	<b>všeho</b>	<b>vší</b>	<b>všeho</b>		<b>všech</b>	
D	<b>všemu</b>	<b>vší</b>	<b>všemu</b>		<b>všem</b>	
A	<b>všechn</b>	<b>všechnu/</b> <b>vší</b>	<b>všechno/</b> <b>vše</b>	<b>všechny</b>		<b>všechna</b>
L	<b>všem</b>	<b>vší</b>	<b>všem</b>		<b>všech</b>	
I	<b>vším</b>	<b>vší</b>	<b>vším</b>		<b>všemi</b>	

In the singular *všechn* combines with mass nouns, in the plural with count nouns. The neuter singular *všechno/vše* (and its case forms) is used impersonally to mean ‘everything’; the

masculine animate plural *všichni* (and its case forms) has a similar force, invoking ‘everybody’. The following forms in the paradigm have alternates (used more frequently in speech) in *-cek*, *-ck-*: *všechen* > *všecek*, *všechna* > *všecka*, *všechno* > *všecko*, *všechnu* > *všecku*, *všechny* > *všecky*, *všichni* > *všicci*.

#### 2.1.4 Numeral morphology

The following table provides a representative sample of cardinal and ordinal numerals.

	ordinal	cardinal
‘first’, ‘one’	<i>první</i>	<i>jeden, jedna, jedno</i>
‘second’, ‘two’	<i>druhý</i>	<i>dva, dvě</i>
‘third’, ‘three’	<i>třetí</i>	<i>tři</i>
‘fourth’, ‘four’	<i>čtvrtý</i>	<i>čtyři</i>
‘fifth’, ‘five’	<i>pátý</i>	<i>pět</i>
‘sixth’, ‘six’	<i>šestý</i>	<i>šest</i>
‘seventh’, ‘seven’	<i>sedmý</i>	<i>sedm</i>
‘eighth’, ‘eight’	<i>osmý</i>	<i>osm</i>
‘ninth’, ‘nine’	<i>devátý</i>	<i>devět</i>
‘tenth’, ‘ten’	<i>desátý</i>	<i>deset</i>
‘eleventh’, ‘eleven’	<i>jedenáctý</i>	<i>jedenáct</i>
all other teens	<i>-áctý</i>	<i>-áct</i>
‘twentieth’, ‘twenty’	<i>dvacátý</i>	<i>dvacet</i>
‘thirtieth’, ‘thirty’	<i>třicátý</i>	<i>třicet</i>
‘fortieth’, ‘forty’	<i>čtyřicátý</i>	<i>čtyřicet</i>
‘fiftieth’, ‘fifty’	<i>padesátý</i>	<i>padesát</i>
all other tens	<i>-átý</i>	<i>-át</i>
‘hundredth’, ‘hundred’	<i>stý</i>	<i>sto</i>
‘two hundredth’, ‘two hundred’	<i>dvoustý</i>	<i>dvě stě</i>
‘three hundredth’, ‘three hundred’	<i>třístý</i>	<i>tři sta</i>
‘four hundredth’, ‘four hundred’	<i>čtyřstý</i>	<i>čtyři sta</i>
‘five hundredth’, ‘five hundred’	<i>pěstý</i>	<i>pět set</i>
all other hundredths, hundreds	<i>-istý</i>	<i>-- set</i>
‘thousandth’, ‘thousand’	<i>tisící</i>	<i>tisíc</i>
‘millionth’, ‘million’	<i>milióntý</i>	<i>milión</i>
‘billionth’, ‘billion’	<i>miliardový</i>	<i>miliarda</i>

*Cardinal numerals*

All cardinal numerals are inflected for case, ‘one’ and ‘two’ additionally distinguish gender, and ‘one’ further distinguishes number formally as well (with a meaning ‘one pair or set of’).

<i>jeden</i> ‘one’						
	singular			plural		
	masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine	neuter
N	<i>jeden</i>	<i>jedna</i>	<i>jedno</i>	<i>jedny</i>	<i>jedny</i>	<i>jedna</i>
(anim:)				<i>jedni</i>		
G	<i>jednoho</i>	<i>jedné</i>	<i>jednoho</i>		<i>jedněch</i>	
D	<i>jednomu</i>	<i>jedné</i>	<i>jednomu</i>		<i>jedněm</i>	
A	<i>jeden</i>	<i>jednu</i>	<i>jedno</i>	<i>jedny</i>	<i>jedny</i>	<i>jedna</i>
(anim:)	<i>jednoho</i>					
L	<i>jednom</i>	<i>jedné</i>	<i>jednom</i>		<i>jedněch</i>	
I	<i>jedním</i>	<i>jednou</i>	<i>jedním</i>		<i>jedněmi</i>	

<i>dva</i> ‘two’		
	masculine	feminine + neuter
NA	<i>dva</i>	<i>dvě</i>
GL		<i>dvou</i>
DI		<i>dvěma</i>

*Oba* ‘both’ shares this paradigm.

	<i>tři</i> ‘three’ and <i>čtyři</i> ‘four’	
NA	<i>tři</i>	<i>čtyři</i>
G	<i>tří</i>	<i>čtyř</i>
D	<i>třem</i>	<i>čtyřem</i>
L	<i>třech</i>	<i>čtyřech</i>
I	<i>třemi</i>	<i>čtyřmi</i>

The numerals ‘five’- ‘nineteen’; the eight multiples of ‘ten’, ‘twenty’ - ‘ninety’ and all inverted (one-word) numerals have zero-ending in the NA and *-i* for all oblique cases (GDLI). Non-inverted (two-word) numerals ending in -1, -2, -3, and -4 have the same endings as the numerals would have individually. Two-digit numerals above the teens can be expressed either by listing the tens (twenties, etc.) plus ones (twos, etc.) or by use of an inverted compound consisting of ‘one’ through ‘nine’ + *-a-* + ‘twenty’ through ‘ninety’; thus ‘twenty-three’ can be realized as *dvacet tři* or *třiadvacet*.

	NA	GDLI
‘five’	<i>pět</i>	<i>pěti</i>
‘eight’	<i>osm</i>	<i>osmi</i>
‘nine’	<i>devět</i>	<i>devíti</i>
‘ten’	<i>deset</i>	<i>deseti/desíti</i>
‘eleven’	<i>jedenáct</i>	<i>jedenácti</i>
‘eighteen’	<i>osmnáct</i>	<i>osmnácti</i>
‘twenty’	<i>dvacet</i>	<i>dvaceti</i>
‘eighty’	<i>osmdesát</i>	<i>osmdesáti</i>
‘twenty-five’ (inverted)	<i>pěťadvacet</i>	<i>pěťadvaceti</i>

	NA	GDLI
'twenty-five'	<i>dvacet pět</i>	<i>dvaceti pěti</i>
'eighty-six' (inverted)	<i>šestaosmdesát</i>	<i>šestaosmdesáti</i>
'eighty-six'	<i>osmdesát šest</i>	<i>osmdesáti šesti</i>
'twenty-one' (inverted)	<i>jednadvacet</i>	<i>jednadvaceti</i>
'twenty-one'	<i>dvacet jedna</i>	<i>dvaceti jedn-</i> (endings as above)
'thirty-two' (inverted)	<i>dvaatřicet</i>	<i>dvaatřiceti</i>
'thirty-two'	<i>třicet dva</i>	<i>třiceti dv-</i> (endings as above)

The following four numerals have other declensions:

*sto* 'hundred' is a hard stem neuter noun; note *dvě stě* 'two hundred';

*tisíc* 'thousand' is a soft stem masculine noun with alternate Gpl forms *tisíc* and *tisíců*;

*milión* 'million' is a hard stem masculine noun;

*miliarda* 'billion' is a hard stem feminine noun.

All four of these numerals observe the syntax of numeral phrases when combined with other numerals: *pět set* 'five hundred', *tři tisíce* 'three thousand', *šest miliónů* 'six million' (see section 3.2 for an explanation of numeral syntax).

#### Ordinal numerals

All ordinal numerals are declined like adjectives; three are of the soft stem type: *první* 'first', *třetí* 'third', and *tisící* 'thousandth'. Aside from the suppletive *první* 'first' and *druhý* 'second', all cardinals are formed by adding -ý, but cardinals in -elět have ordinals in -átý. With compound numerals all items are ordinal: *stý sedmdesátý pátý* 'one hundred seventy fifth', however this usage is quite bookish and it is more normal to use cardinal forms for numerals above ninety, followed by ordinal forms for the final two digits: *sto sedmdesátý pátý*. As with cardinal numerals, two-digit numerals between 21 and 99 (excluding the even tens, which consist of only one word) have two possibilities: both *dvacátý třetí* and *třicetadvacátý* express 'twenty-third'.

#### Indefinite numerals

*Kolik* 'how many', *několik* 'several', *tolik* 'so many', and *mnoho* 'much, many' all follow the same paradigm, with the desinence -a in all oblique cases. Other indefinite numerals, such as *málo* 'little, few', *trochu* 'some', *hodně* 'a lot', are adverbial and uninflected.

#### Other numerals

Collectives tend to be limited to numerals five or lower. There are three common types, all of which are most frequently used with groups of people: *dvoje* 'two', *troje* 'three'; *čtyvero* 'four', *patero* 'five'; *dvojice* 'two', *trojice* 'three', *čtyřice* 'four', *pětice* 'five'. Collections of types of substances can be named by *dvojí* 'two types of' and *trojí* 'three types of' (both declined as soft stem adjectives).

Multiples have four types of expression. Both -krát (an adverb indicating repetition) and -násobný (an adjective with corresponding adverb in -ě with nuances of intensity) yield 'times', and both can combine with definite and indefinite numerals: *tříkrát* 'three times', *mnohokrát* 'many times'; *trojnásobný* 'three times', *kolikanásobný* 'how many times'. *Dvojitý* 'double' and *trojitý* 'triple' (both adjectives) are isolates with no correlates for higher numerals. 'For the Xth time' is an adverb formed from the ordinal prefixed in *po-* with an ending of -elí: *podruhé* 'for the second time', *potřetí* 'for the third time'.

Aside from ‘half’, fractions are formed by adding *-ina* to the stem (sometimes modified) of the cardinal numeral in the denominator: *sedmina* ‘seventh’, *desetina* ‘tenth’, *setina* ‘one-hundredth’ (but note *třetina* ‘third’, which is formed from the ordinal stem). The resulting feminine hard stem noun is then modified by the cardinal numeral of the numerator according to the customary rules of numeral syntax. ‘Half’ has a variety of realizations, among them: *půl*, *půlka*, *polovina*, *polovice*, *polovic*; ‘fourth’ has alternative forms: *čtvrtina*, *čtvrť*, *čtvrťka*.

### 2.1.5 Verbal morphology

The categories expressed by verbal morphology include aspect (perfective, imperfective), mood (indicative, imperative, conditional), voice (active, passive), tense (non-past, past), person (first, second, third), gender (masculine animate and inanimate, feminine, neuter), and number (singular, plural); motion verbs additionally distinguish the sub-aspect of directionality (unidirectional/temporal, non-unidirectional/non-temporal). The maximum paradigm of a typical verb contains the following forms, all of which are marked for aspect (and directionality, if a motion verb) and the indicated categories:

- an infinitive
- a non-past conjugation (person and number)
- a past conjugation (person, gender, and number)
- a conditional conjugation (person, gender, and number)
- an imperative conjugation (person and number)
- participles (active and passive, further declined as adjectives)
- gerunds (tense, gender, and number)

A deverbal noun can be formed quite regularly from the passive participle by adding *-í*, creating an *-í* type neuter noun (compare the passive participle *pít* ‘drunk’ and the noun *pítí* ‘drinking’).

The verb *být* ‘be’ is both highly irregular and essential to the paradigms of all other verbs, since many of its forms serve as auxiliary forms. Here are the forms of *být*:

	Present	Past	Future	Conditional
1sg	<i>jsem</i>	<i>byl/-a/-o jsem</i>	<i>budu</i>	<i>byl/-a/-o bych</i>
2sg	<i>jsi</i>	<i>byl/-a/-o jsi/s</i>	<i>budeš</i>	<i>byl/-a/-o bys</i>
3sg	<i>je</i>	<i>byl/-a/-o</i>	<i>bude</i>	<i>byl/-a/-o by</i>
1pl	<i>jsme</i>	<i>byli/-y/-a jsme</i>	<i>budeme</i>	<i>byli/-y/-a bychom</i>
2pl	<i>jste</i>	<i>byl/-a/-il/-y/-a jste</i>	<i>budete</i>	<i>byl/-a/-il/-y/-a byste</i>
3pl	<i>jsou</i>	<i>byli/-y/-a</i>	<i>budou</i>	<i>byli/-y/-a by</i>

The past tense of all verbs is formed by using first- and second- person present tense forms of *být* (*jsem*, *jsi* -- sometimes reduced to just *s*, *jsme*, and *jste*) as enclitic auxiliary forms, in combination with the *-l* forms of a verb. The *-l* forms of the main verb (for example, *byl/-a/-o/-i/-y*) indicate number and gender, specifically: masculine and feminine for 1sg and 2sg; masculine, feminine, and neuter for 3sg; masculine animate and masculine inanimate/feminine for 1pl; masculine singular (formal address), feminine singular (formal address), masculine animate and masculine inanimate/feminine plural for 2pl; and masculine animate, masculine inanimate/feminine, and neuter for 3pl. The future tense of *být* is used as an auxiliary verb to form the future tense with imperfective infinitive verb forms. Like the past tense, the conditional uses the *-l* forms of the main verb in combination with an enclitic auxiliary which is part of the *být* paradigm: *bych*, *bys*, *by*, *bychom*, *byste*, *by*.

Except for the biaspectual verbs (such as *jmenovat* ‘name’, *organizovat* ‘organize’), all verb forms unambiguously express aspect, and this has a direct influence on tense. Perfective verbs always denote some change of state. Very often, they designate an accomplishment which has been carried out. The process of carrying out this accomplishment is expressed by an imperfective verb (almost always with the same stem) which then forms an aspectual pair with



its corresponding perfective. But imperfective verbs also frequently designate an unchanging or static state, or an activity (which may consist of repeated acts) which does not move toward an implicit goal. These imperfectives do not enter into aspectual pairs with perfectives; they are imperfectives tantum. On the other hand, perfectives which designate only change of state and involve no particular carrying out of an accomplishment do not enter into aspectual pairs with imperfectives; they are perfectives tantum.

Tense is formally limited to a binary opposition of non-past vs. past, and the imperfective additionally forms a future with the future tense of the verb *být* ‘be’ used as an auxiliary.

	Past	Present	Future
perfective verb: <i>zavolat</i>	past conjugation: <i>Zavolal.</i> ‘He called.’ (discrete past act)	non-past conjugation: <i>Zavolá.</i> ‘He calls.’ (discrete narrated act)	non-past conjugation: <i>Zavolá.</i> ‘He will call.’ (discrete future act)
imperfective verb: <i>volat</i>	past conjugation: <i>Volal.</i> ‘He was calling/called.’ (durative or repeated past act)	non-past conjugation: <i>Volá.</i> ‘He is calling/calls.’ (durative or repeated present act)	future auxiliary + infinitive: <i>Bude volat.</i> ‘He will be calling/will call.’ (durative or repeated future act)

Perfective verbs are incompatible with the future auxiliary. The perfective present has a restricted range of uses, and appears most often in the narration of a past event in the historical present, in stage directions, and in instructions.

#### 2.1.5.1 Conjugation classes

Czech verbal inflection is rife with morphophonemic alternation, analyzable in terms of stem types (cf. Townsend 2000 & 1990). All verbs are either suffixed or non-suffixed and are identified by suffix or final root segments. For each subtype an example verb is cited in its basic stem form (which is either the infinitive or the 3pl non-past, whichever presents a longer stem after the desinence is removed), and the corresponding form is also given (the 3pl if the infinitive is basic, the infinitive if the 3pl is basic). The basic stem form identifies the subtype of the verb, thus providing the information necessary to generate the entire inflectional paradigm. Notes on the peculiarities of each paradigm type are provided. “PPP” refers to passive participle. In the remainder of 2.1, all regular verbs are cited in their basic form only.

Czech verbs can be divided into three general categories:

Type I: Suffixed verbs with 1sg *-ám*

Type II: Suffixed verbs with 1sg *-ím*

Type III: Suffixed and non-suffixed verbs with 1sg *-u/-i*, which are further divided according to the final segment of the stem into stems ending in a nasal, *j*, or obstruent.

The following is a list of the types of verbs with an example for each type. The example verb is listed in both its infinitive and 3pl forms; the form that is listed first is the basic form. The conjugation lists: all forms of the non-past; the masculine singular past (*-l* form); the masculine singular past passive participle (or verbal noun if there is no past passive participle); and the singular imperative. Variant forms are listed where they exist. C indicates “consonant”; V indicates “vowel”, and n/s indicates “non-syllabic”. A hyphen indicates that a given form does not exist without a prefix. For a detailed description of special features of the verb types, see Townsend 2000.

## TYPE I - SUFFIXED with 1sg -ám

Subtype	Example Verb	Conjugation
<b>aj</b>	<i>dělají, dělat</i> 'do, make'	<i>dělám, děláš, dělá, děláme, děláte, dělají; dělal; dělán; dělej</i>

## TYPE II - SUFFIXED with 1sg -ím

<b>i</b>	<i>soudit, soudí</i> 'judge'	<i>soudím, soudíš, soudí, soudíme, soudíte, soudí; soudil; souzen; sud'</i>
<b>ě</b>	<i>trpět, trpí</i> 'suffer'	<i>trpím, trpíš, trpí, trpíme, trpíte, trpí; trpěl; trpěn; trp</i>
<b>ěj</b>	<i>umět, umějí, umět</i> 'know how'	<i>umím, umíš, umí, umíme, umíte, umějí; uměl; umění; uměj</i>

## TYPE III - SUFFIXED with 1sg -u/-i

Subtype	Example Verb	Conjugation
<b>ova</b>	<i>sledovat, sledují</i> 'follow'	<i>sleduji, sleduješ, sleduje, sledujeme, sledujete, sledují; sledoval; sledován; sleduj</i>
<b>a non-labial</b>	<i>mazat, mažou</i> 'smear'	<i>mažu/maži, mažeš, maže, mažeme, mažete, mažou/maží; mazal; mazán; maž</i>
<b>a labial</b>	<i>sypat, sypou/sypají</i> 'strew'	<i>sypu/sypám, sypeš/sypáš, sype/sypá, sypeme/sypáme, sypetel/sypáte, sypou/sypají; sypal; sypán; syp/sypej</i>
<b>n/s a</b>	<i>zvat, zvou</i> 'invite'	<i>zvu, zveš, zve, zveme, zvete, zvou; zval; zván; zvi</i>
<b>n/V/s a</b>	<i>brát, berou</i> 'take'	<i>beru, bereš, bere, bereme, berete, berou; bral; brán; ber</i>
<b>ř</b>	<i>třít, třoul/trou</i> 'rub'	<i>třu/tru, třeš, tře, třeme, třete, třoul/trou; třel; třen; tři</i>
<b>Cnou</b>	<i>tisknout, tisknou</i> 'press, print'	<i>tisknu, tiskneš, tiskne, tiskneme, tisknete, tisknou; tiskl; tištěn/tisknut; tiskni</i>
<b>Vnou</b>	<i>minout, minou</i> 'pass'	<i>minu, mineš, mine, mineme, minete, minou; minul; -minut; -miň</i>

## TYPE III - NONSUFFIXED with 1sg -u/-i

Subtype	Example Verb	Conjugation
<b>Nonsuffixed Stems Ending in a Nasal</b>		
<b>n 1</b>	<i>začnou, začít</i> 'begin'	<i>začnu, začneš, začne, začneme, začnete, začnou; začal; začat; začni</i>
<b>n 2</b>	<i>tnou, tít/tnout</i> 'chop'	<i>tnu, tneš, tne, tneme, tnete, tnou; t'al; t'at; tni</i>
<b>jm 1</b>	<i>zajmou, zajmout</i> 'capture'	<i>zajmu, zajmeš, zajme, zajmeme, zajmete, zajmou; zajal; zajat; zajmi</i>
<b>jm 2</b>	<i>sejmou, sejmout/ snít(i)</i> 'take off'	<i>sejmu, sejmeš, sejme, sejmeme, sejmete, sejmou; sejmull/sňal; sejmout/sňat; sejmi</i>

**Nonsuffixed Stems Ending in a j**

<b>yj</b>	<i>kryjí, kryt</i> 'cover'	<i>kryji, kryješ, kryje, kryjeme, kryjete, kryjí; kryl; kryt; kryj</i>
<b>ij</b>	<i>pijí, pít</i> 'drink'	<i>piji, piješ, pije, pijeme, pijete, pijí; pil; pit; pij</i>
<b>uj</b>	<i>plují, plout</i> 'float, sail'	<i>pluji, pluješ, pluje, plujeme, plujete, plují; plul; plutí; pluj</i>
<b>aj</b>	<i>hrají, hrát</i> 'play'	<i>hrají, hraješ, hraje, hrajeme, hrajete, hrají; hrál; hrán; hraj/hrej</i>
<b>ěj (í)</b>	<i>klejí, klít</i> 'swear'	<i>kleji, kleješ, kleje, klejeme, klejete, klejí; klel; -klet; klej</i>
<b>ěj (á)</b>	<i>hřejí, hřát</i> 'heat'	<i>hřeji, hřeješ, hřeje, hřejeme, hřejete, hřejí; hřál; hřát/hřán; hřej</i>

**Nonsuffixed Stems Ending in an Obstruent**

<b>d/t</b>	<i>vedou, vést</i> 'lead'	<i>vedu, vedeš, vede, vedeme, vedete, vedou; vedl; veden; ved'</i>
<b>z/s</b>	<i>nesou, nést</i> 'carry'	<i>nesu, neseš, nese, neseme, nesete, nesou; nesl; nesen; nes</i>
<b>h/k</b>	<i>pečou, péci</i> 'bake'	<i>peču/peku, pečeš, peče, pečeme, pečete, pečou/pekou; pekl; pečen; pec/peč</i>

*Irregular verbs:*

*spát; spím, spíš, spí, spíme, spíte, spí; spal; spaní; spi* 'sleep'.

*chtít; chci, chceš, chce, chceme, chcete, chtějí; chtěl; chtěn, chtěj* 'want' has a stem alternation of *chc-* vs. *cht'-*.

*jít; jdu, jdeš, jdeme, jdete, jdou; šel; -jití; jdi* 'walk' has a non-past stem of *jd-* and a suppletive past stem: m sg *šel*, f sg & n pl *šla*, n sg *šlo*, etc.

*jet; jedu, jedeš, jede, jedeme, jedete, jedou; jel; -jetí; jed'* 'ride' is a **d/t** subtype which truncates the stem in infinitive and past forms.

*číst; čtu, čteš, čte, čteme, čtete, čtou; četl; čten; čti* 'read' is a **d/t** subtype with a mobile vowel.

*bát se; bojím se, bojíš se, bojí se, bojíme se, bojíte se, bojí se; bál se; --; boj se* 'fear' and *stát; stojím, stojíš, stojí, stojíme, stojíte, stojí; stál; stání; stůj* 'stand' are suffixed **ě** subtype verbs with contracted infinitive and past forms.

*stát se; stanu se, staneš se, stane se, staneme se, stanete se, stanou se; stal se; -stání; staň se* 'become' is a non-suffixed verb with an *n* in the non-past forms.

*mít; mám, máš, má, máme, máte, mají; měl; mání; měj* 'have' has variations in the vowel of the stem.

*mlít; melu, meleš, mele, meleme, melete, melou; mlel; mlet; mel* 'grind' is an unusual non-suffixed stem.

*moci; můžu/mohu, můžeš, může, můžeme, můžete, můžu/mohou; mohl; -možen; --* is most similar to the **h/k** subtype with a short infinitive and unusual stem alternations.

*jíst; jím, jíš, jí, jíme, jíte, jedí; jedl; jedení; jez* 'eat' and *vědět; vím, víš, ví, víme, víte, vědí; věděl; vědění, věz* 'know' share irregularities in the non-past and imperative.

*hnát; ženu, ženeš, žene, ženeme, ženete, ženou; hnál; hnán; žeň* 'chase' is a **n/s a** type with a non-past stem of *žen-* and a past stem of *hna-*.

*vzít; vezmu, vezmeš, vezme, vezmeme, vezmete, vezmou; vzal; vzat; vezmi* 'take' is a nasal type with unusual stem alternations.

### Imperative formation

Synthetic imperatives (2sg, 1pl, 2pl) are derivable from the non-past conjugation via the following algorithm:

I. for Type I verbs, the imperatives are *-ej, -ejme, -ejte* (cf. *dělej, dělejme, dělejte* ‘do’)

II. for other verbs, take the 3pl non-past form and remove the final *-ou* or *-í*.

A. if the resulting form ends in a single consonant, the imperative endings are *-0* (zero), *-me, -te*: (cf. *sleduj, sledujme, sledujte* ‘follow’; *trp, trpme, trpte* ‘suffer’)

i. if the final consonant is *t, d, n, k*, or *h*, it undergoes Type 1 alternation: imperatives *ved’*, *ved’me*, *ved’te* ‘lead’; the velars have alternate forms with Type 2 alternations as well, cf. *pec/peč, pecme/pečme, pectel/pečte* ‘bake’.

ii. if the stem vowel is long, shorten it: *vrátit* ‘return’ has *vrat’*, *vrat’me*, *vrat’te*; *koupit* ‘buy’ has *kup*, *kupme*, *kupte*; *přiblížit* ‘approach’ has *přibliž*, *přibližme*, *přibližte*.

B. if the resulting form ends in a consonant cluster, the imperative endings are *-i, -ěme, -ěte*, which condition Type 1 alternations (cf. *zvi, zvěme, zvěte* ‘call’).

Third person imperatives consist of the particle *at’* or *necht’* and the appropriate non-past form: *at’/necht’ píšou* ‘let them write!’. The particles *at’/necht’* can also be used with first and second person non-past forms: *At’ neuděláš žádné chyby!* ‘Don’t make any mistakes!’, *At’ ho už víckrát neuvidím!* ‘May I never see him again!’.

### Gerunds and active participles

In addition to the forms cited above, the paradigm of a verb may include a present gerund, a past gerund, and both present and past active participles.

The present gerund is formed using the following endings, depending upon the conjugation type and the gender and number:

Type I and Type II verbs		Type III verbs	
m: <i>-e</i>	<i>dělaje</i>	m: <i>-a</i>	<i>veda</i>
f or n: <i>-íc</i>	<i>dělajíc</i> ‘while doing’	f or n: <i>-ouc</i>	<i>vedouc</i> ‘while leading’
pl: <i>-íce</i>	<i>dělajíce</i>	pl: <i>-ouce</i>	<i>vedouce</i>

The present active participle is formed by adding the soft adjectival ending *-í* to the feminine/neuter form of the present gerund: *dělající* ‘(the one who is) doing’; *vedoucí* ‘(the one who is) leading, boss’.

The past gerund is formed by removing the *-l* of the past tense and adding these endings: m *-v*, f or n *-vši*, pl *-vše*; the past active participle is formed by adding *-vší*. This yields forms like *dělav*, *dělavši*, *dělavše* ‘having done’, *dělavší* ‘(the one who has) done’. The *-v* in these forms is omitted for obstruent stems: *přived*, *přivedši*, *přivedše* ‘having led (to a place)’, *přivedší* ‘(the one who has) led (to a place)’.

#### 2.1.5.2 Negation

Verbs are negated by prefixing *ne-* to the non-past or past conjugated form: *volám, volat, volal* ‘call’ > *nevolám, nevolat, nevolal* ‘not call’. In the imperfective future the *ne-* is prefixed to the future auxiliary: *budu volat* ‘I will be calling’ > *nebudu volat* ‘I won’t be calling’. Otherwise *ne-* is never prefixed to auxiliaries. The verb *být* ‘be’ has an irregular negative 3sg form: *není* ‘is not’.

## 2.1.5.3 Aspectual derivation

Most simplex verbs are imperfective (*volají* ‘call’), but some are perfective (*dají* ‘give’). Aspectual derivation is achieved by means of both prefixation and suffixation. Prefixation may additionally modify lexical meaning.

*Formation of perfectives*

Perfectives can be formed by adding a prefix (*do-*, *na-*, *nad-*, *o-*, *ob-*, *od-*, *po-*, *pod-*, *pro-*, *pře-*, *před-*, *při-*, *roz-*, *s-*, *u-*, *v-*, *vy-*, *vz-*, *z-*, *za-*) or the suffix *-nou-/nu-* to a verbal stem:

*volají* > *zavolají* ‘call’

*děkovat* > *poděkovat* ‘thank’

*dají* ‘give’ > *přidají* ‘add to’

*křičet* > *křiknout* > *vykřiknout* ‘yell’.

Note, however, that there are many verbs suffixed in *-nou-/nu-* that are imperfective (therefore the presence of this suffix does not necessarily predict that a verb will be perfective): *táhnout* ‘pull, drag’ and *tisknout* ‘press’ are both imperfective.

*Formation of imperfectives*

There are four imperfectivizing suffixes which are added to the stem of a prefixed or simplex perfective stem: *-aj-*, *-vaj-*, *-ova-*, and *-ěj-*. The first three are associated with stem vowel lengthening (vowel lengthening often occurs, but is not entirely predictable), the fourth with stem vowel shortening. The *-nou-/nu-* suffix is dropped in imperfective derivation.

Suffix *-aj-* produces Type I **aj** imperfectives from the following verb subtypes and is associated with lengthening of the preceding vowel for Type III obstruents ( $e > é$ ,  $o > á$ ):

Base Type	Example Verb	Derived Imperfective
Type III: ending in obstruents	<i>vylezou</i> ‘crawl out’	<i>vylézají</i>
	<i>pomohou</i> ‘help’	<i>pomáhají</i>
Type III: <b>n/s a, ř</b> (insert <i>í/ý</i> )	<i>vyberou</i> ‘choose’	<i>vybírají</i>
Type III: ending in nasals (insert <i>í</i> )	<i>začnou</i> ‘begin’	<i>začínají</i>
Type II: <b>nou</b>	<i>podniknout</i> ‘undertake’	<i>podnikají</i>

Suffix *-vaj-* produces Type I **aj** imperfectives from the following verb subtypes and is associated with lengthening of preceding vowels ( $a > á$ ,  $ě > í$ ,  $i > í$ ,  $y > ý$ ,  $u > ou$ ):

Base Type	Example Verb	Derived Imperfective
Type III: ending in <i>j</i>	<i>přežijí</i> ‘live through’	<i>přežívají</i>
Type I: <b>aj</b>	<i>vydělají</i> ‘earn’	<i>vydělávají</i>
Type III: <b>ova</b>	<i>zpracovat</i> ‘process’	<i>zpracovávají</i>
Type III: <b>a, n/s a</b>	<i>přičesat</i> ‘comb’	<i>přičesávají</i>

Suffix *-ěj-* produces Type II **ěj** imperfectives from the following verb subtypes and is associated with Type 2 consonant alternations and the lengthening of preceding vowels ( $a > á$ ,  $o > á$ ,  $i > í$ ,  $u > ou$ ):

Base Type	Example Verb	Derived Imperfective
Type II: <b>i</b>	<i>odpustit</i> ‘forgive’	<i>odpouštějí</i>
Type III: <b>ij</b>	<i>propijí</i> ‘squander on drink’	<i>propíjejí</i>

Suffix *-ova-* produces Type III **ova** imperfectives from the following verb subtypes, and is associated with Type 2 consonant alternations (for Type I verbs) and shortening of root vowels (for verbs of all Types):

Base Type	Example Verb	Derived Imperfective
Type II: <b>i, ě</b>	<i>odsoudit</i> ‘sentence’	<i>odsuzovat</i>
Type III: <b>nou</b>	<i>přetáhnout</i> ‘extend’	<i>přetahovat</i>
Type III: <b>a</b>	<i>dokázat</i> ‘prove’	<i>dokazovat</i>

A few aspectual pairs are suppletive or display unusual variations:

Gloss	Imperfective verb	Perfective verb
‘take’	<i>brát, berou</i>	<i>vezmou, vzít</i>
‘put, lay down’	<i>(prefix)-kládají</i>	<i>(prefix)-ložit</i>
‘tell’	<i>říkají</i>	<i>řící, řeknou</i>
‘write’	<i>-písovati</i>	<i>-psat, -píší</i>
‘eat’	<i>-jídají</i>	<i>-jedit, -jíst</i>

Prefixed motion verbs use specialized variants of their roots when deriving imperfectives; this is discussed in 2.1.5.4.

A frequentative suffix *-vaj-* can be added to some imperfective stems; it lengthens the vowel in the preceding syllable (or replaces it with *á*) and forms Type I **aj** verbs with a frequentative meaning.

Imperfective Verb	Frequentative Verb
<i>chodit</i> ‘walk’	<i>chodívají</i> ‘walk habitually’
<i>sedět</i> ‘sit’	<i>sedávají</i> ‘sit habitually’
<i>nosit</i> ‘carry’	<i>nosívají</i> ‘carry habitually’
<i>být</i> ‘be’	<i>bývají</i> ‘be habitually’

The verb *být* ‘be’ can take the reduplicated form of the frequentative suffix, producing *bývávat*, as in *Bývávalo dobře* ‘Things used to be good’.

#### 2.1.5.4 Motion verbs

A small group of verbs involving physical movement through space exhibit a further aspectual distinction within the imperfective category, distinguishing between motion along a route at a given time (expressed with the determined stem, which signals unidirectionality and unitemporality) and motion that is random or habitual (expressed with the non-determined stem, which signals non-unidirectionality and non-unitemporality). This distinction is crisper for prototypical motion verbs (‘walk’, ‘lead’, ‘carry’, ‘ride’, etc.) than for less prototypical verbs (‘flow’, ‘roll’, ‘pull’, ‘drag’). A salient morphological characteristic of motion verbs is their tendency to use specialized variants of their roots when forming derived imperfectives. A perfectivizing prefix can be added to the determined stem, creating a perfective verb with no marking for the determined/non-determined distinction (since this exists only for imperfective verbs). The corresponding imperfective is typically formed from the non-determined (instead of the determined) stem, often derived by *-ěj-*, with the expected mutation of final consonant and lengthening of root vowel. Thus, for example, the prefix *při-* can be added to the determined stem *jdou, jít* ‘walk’ to create the perfective verb *přijdou, přijít* ‘arrive (on foot)’. The

corresponding imperfective is the derived imperfective stem: *přicházejí, přicházet* (derived from *chodí, chodit* instead of *jdou, jít*). Three verbs (marked with asterisks in the table) do not form the prefixed perfective directly from the determined stem, but use a related stem in *-nout* for this purpose. Thus ‘arrive (running)’ is: perfective *přiběhnout* and imperfective *přibíhají* (but note that ‘fly’ can append prefixes to either *-letět* or *-létnout*).

Gloss	Determined Stem	Non-Determined Stem	Derived Imperfective
‘walk’	<i>jdou, jít</i>	<i>chodit</i>	<i>-cházejí</i>
‘ride’	<i>jedou, jet</i>	<i>jezdit</i>	<i>-jíždějí</i>
‘lead’	<i>vedou</i>	<i>vodit</i>	<i>-vádějí</i>
‘carry (on foot)’	<i>nesou</i>	<i>nosit</i>	<i>-nášejí</i>
‘carry (by conveyance)’	<i>vezou</i>	<i>vozit</i>	<i>-vážejí</i>
‘drive, chase’	<i>hnát, ženou</i>	<i>honit</i>	<i>-hánějí</i>
‘fly’	<i>letět, *-létnout</i>	<i>létají</i>	<i>-létají</i> or <i>-letovat</i>
‘run’	<i>běžet, *-běhnout</i>	<i>běhají</i>	<i>-bíhají</i>
‘drag’	<i>vlečou, *-vléknout</i>	<i>vláčet</i>	<i>-vlékají</i>
‘flow, run’	<i>tečou</i>	<i>těkají</i>	<i>-tíkají</i>
‘roll’	<i>valit</i>	<i>válet</i>	<i>-valovat</i>
‘pull’	<i>táhnout</i>	<i>tahají</i>	<i>-tahovat</i>

### 2.1.6 Uninflected parts of speech

Czech has several classes of words that are not inflected. These include all adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, particles, and interjections. We begin with a table of the prepositions and the cases they use (an explanation of the syntactic use of case both with and without prepositions appears in Chapter 3), followed by examples from each of the latter three categories.

Prepositions and the Cases They Govern (Note that prepositions ending in a consonant may add *-e* (less frequently *-u*); this phenomenon is described under Vowel Epenthesis in section 1.2.):

	Genitive	Dative	Accusative	Locative	Instrumental
<i>během</i>	‘during’				
<i>bez</i>	‘without’				
<i>blízko</i>	‘near’				
<i>daleko</i>	‘far’				
<i>dle</i>	‘according to’				
<i>do</i>	‘(in)to, before’				
<i>k</i>		‘to, toward’			
<i>kolem</i>	‘around, past’				
<i>kromě</i>	‘except’				
<i>mezi</i>			‘between’ (motion)		‘between’ (rest)
<i>mimo</i>			‘besides’		

	Genitive	Dative	Accusative	Locative	Instrumental
			past'		
<i>místo</i>	'instead of'				
<i>na</i>			'to, for'	'on, at'	
<i>nad</i>			'above' (motion)		'above' (rest)
<i>naproti</i>		'opposite'			
<i>navzdory</i>		'in spite of'			
<i>o</i>			'for, against, by'	'about, at, during'	
<i>ob</i>			'every other'		
<i>od</i>	'from'				
<i>okolo</i>	'around'				
<i>po</i>			'up to, all through'	'after, along, over (a surface), each, by'	
<i>poblíž</i>	'near'				
<i>pod</i>			'under' (motion)		'under' (rest)
<i>podél</i>	'along'				
<i>podle</i>	'according to, along, alongside'				
<i>pro</i>			'for, because of'		
<i>proti</i>		'against, compared to'			
<i>před</i>			'to the front of' (motion)		'in front of' (rest)
<i>přes</i>			'across, over, in spite of'		
<i>při</i>				'at, near, with, in view of'	
<i>s</i>	'off of, down'		'capable of'		'with'
<i>skrz</i>			'through'		
<i>u</i>	'near, by, at'				
<i>uprostřed</i>	'in the middle of'				
<i>uvnitř</i>	'inside'				
<i>v</i>			'into'	'in'	
<i>včetně</i>	'including'				
<i>vedle</i>	'near, by,				



	Genitive	Dative	Accusative	Locative	Instrumental
	next to'				
<i>vně</i>	'outside'				
<i>vůči</i>	'towards, in the face of'				
<i>vyjma</i>	'except'		'except'		
<i>z</i>	'out of, from'				
<i>za</i>	'during'		'behind, beyond (motion), by, for'		'behind' (rest)
<i>zpod</i>	'from beneath'				

Conjunctions: *a* 'and', *ačkoliv* '(al)though', *ale* 'but', *ani(ž)* 'not even', *až* 'when, up until', *bud' ... (a)nebo* 'either...or', *i* 'and (even)', *dokud* 'until', *jak* 'how', *jelikož* 'since', *jestli(že)* 'if, whether', *kdežto* 'whereas', *když* 'when, if', *nebo* 'or', *nebot* 'since', *než* 'than, until', *nýbrž* 'rather, instead', *pokud* 'to the extent that, if', *poněvadž* 'since', *protože* 'because', *přestože* '(al)though', *zda(li)* 'whether', *že* 'that'.

Particles: *ale* 'well', *copak* 'how can it be?', *hele* 'hey, look!', *kéž* 'if only', *konečně* 'ultimately', *no* 'well', *nu(že)* 'well', *přece* 'nevertheless, after all', *tedy/teda* 'well, then', *třeba* 'perhaps, for example', *vždyt* 'after all'.

Interjections: *bác* 'boom', *cák* 'drip', *fr* 'zoom', *fuj* 'yuck', *hepčí* 'achoo', *hurá* 'hooray', *chřup* 'crunch', *křáp* 'crash', *mňam* 'yum', *prásk* 'slam', *tú, tú* 'honk', *vid'* 'right?', *vrz* 'squeak', *žbluňk* 'splash', *žuch* 'kaboom'.

## 2.2 Derivational morphology

Derivational morphology in Czech is accomplished by means of prefixation and suffixation of roots. Nouns, adjectives, and verbs share an often overlapping set of prefixes, though each class of words has its own characteristic suffixes. For these main inflectional classes of words, prefixes largely serve to augment or supplement the meaning of the lexical item, and any suffix is additionally an identifier of what part of speech the item belongs to. Compounding and univerbization are also observed, mainly in the derivation of nouns. Interrogative pronouns and adverbs share a special set of prefixes and suffixes. It should be noted that derivation is of course a much less regular, predictable, and specifiable phenomenon than inflection. Derivation, unlike inflection, is not simply a matter of combining elements according to fixed and predictable patterns; it is subject to various conventionalizations, complexities, and gaps. The component roots do not always exist as independent words, and the meanings of derived words can often not be directly predicted from the meanings of the components. The following sections make often tenuous assumptions about the provenience of words (derivation cannot always be definitively resolved), and provide overly simplified and vague glosses for the elements of derived words.

## 2.2.1 Derivational morphology of nouns, adjectives, and verbs

## 2.2.1.1 Prefixes for nouns, adjectives, and verbs

The following table lists the native Czech prefixes.

Prefix	Noun	Adjective	Verb
<i>bez(e)-</i> ‘without’	<i>bezvědomí</i> ‘unconsciousness’	<i>bezohledný</i> ‘inconsiderate’	
<i>do-, dů-</i> ‘(in)to, finish, add’	<i>doslov</i> ‘epilog’, <i>důvod</i> ‘reason’		<i>dojít</i> ‘go to’, <i>dodělat</i> ‘finish’, <i>dodat</i> ‘add’
<i>mezi-</i> ‘inter-’	<i>mezipatro</i> ‘mezzanine’	<i>mezinárodní</i> ‘international’	
<i>na-, ná-</i> ‘on, fill, quantity’	<i>nábřeží</i> ‘waterfront’	<i>nahořklý</i> ‘rather bitter’	<i>najít</i> ‘find (come on)’, <i>nalepit</i> ‘glue on’, <i>naplnit</i> ‘fill’, <i>napéci</i> ‘bake a quantity of’
<i>nad(e)-</i> ‘above’	<i>nadvláda</i> ‘supremacy’	<i>nadpřirozený</i> ‘supernatural’	<i>nadzvednout</i> ‘lift up’
<i>ne-</i> ‘not’	<i>nepohoda</i> ‘discomfort’	<i>nespolečenský</i> ‘antisocial’	<i>nedbat</i> ‘neglect’
<i>o-, ob(e)-</i> ‘around, subject to (factitive), become, copy’	<i>opar</i> ‘haze; sore’, <i>obnitka</i> ‘end-stitch’	<i>oblouštělý</i> ‘obese’	<i>obejít</i> ‘go around’, <i>obvázat</i> ‘tie up’, <i>oloupat</i> ‘peel’, <i>obnosit</i> ‘wear out’, <i>onemocnět</i> ‘get sick’, <i>opsat</i> ‘copy’
<i>od(e)-</i> ‘from, back, cancel, remove’	<i>odznak</i> ‘badge’	<i>odvěký</i> ‘longstanding’	<i>odejít</i> ‘go away’, <i>odpovědět</i> ‘answer’, <i>odmrazit</i> ‘defrost’, <i>odzbrojit</i> ‘disarm’
<i>pa-</i> (pejorative)	<i>pachut’</i> ‘aftertaste’		<i>padělat</i> ‘counterfeit’
<i>po-</i> ‘along, after, cover, for a while, start off, become’	<i>pobřeží</i> ‘coast’	<i>poválečný</i> ‘post-war’	<i>pokrýt</i> ‘cover’, <i>popovídat si</i> ‘talk a while’, <i>poblednout</i> ‘get pale’, <i>pojít</i> ‘die (of animals) (=start off to another land)’
<i>pod(e)-</i> ‘below, under-’	<i>podzemí</i> ‘underground’	<i>podprůměrný</i> ‘below average’	<i>podcenit</i> ‘underestimate’
<i>polo-</i> ‘half-, semi-, hemi-’	<i>polokruh</i> ‘semicircle’, <i>polokoule</i> ‘hemisphere’	<i>poloprázdný</i> ‘half-empty’	
<i>pra-</i> ‘prior, original’	<i>prababička</i> ‘great-grandmother’, <i>pravlast</i> ‘original homeland’	<i>prahloupý</i> ‘asinine’	

Prefix	Noun	Adjective	Verb
<i>pro-</i> , <i>prů-</i> ‘through, loss’	<i>pronárod</i> ‘breed’, <i>průzkum</i> ‘survey’	<i>prorezavělý</i> ‘rusted through’	<i>projít</i> ‘go through’, <i>prosekat</i> ‘cut through’, <i>prohrát</i> ‘lose’
<i>proti-</i> ‘against, anti-’	<i>protilátka</i> ‘antidote’	<i>protismyslný</i> ‘paradoxical’	
<i>pře-</i> ‘over, trans-, interrupt, superior, miss, re-’	<i>přesila</i> ‘superior force’	<i>překrásný</i> ‘very beautiful’	<i>přejít</i> ‘traverse’, <i>přerušit</i> ‘interrupt’, <i>přemoci</i> ‘overcome’, <i>přehlédnout</i> ‘miss’, <i>předělat</i> ‘redo’
<i>před(e)-</i> ‘before, pre-’	<i>předměstí</i> ‘suburb’	<i>předválečný</i> ‘prewar’	<i>předejít</i> ‘anticipate, precede’, <i>předběhnout</i> ‘outrun’
<i>přes-</i> ‘across, excess’	<i>přesčas</i> ‘overtime’	<i>přespočetný</i> ‘excess’	
<i>při-</i> , <i>pří-</i> ‘at, add, a bit’	<i>přízemí</i> ‘ground floor’	<i>přitvrdlý</i> ‘rather hard’	<i>přijít</i> ‘come, arrive’, <i>přidat</i> ‘add’, <i>přitopit</i> ‘heat a bit’
<i>roz(e)-</i> ‘apart, dis-, annul, excite, get started’	<i>rozcestí</i> ‘crossroads’	<i>rozmilý</i> ‘amiable’	<i>rozejít se</i> ‘separate’, <i>rozzlobit</i> ‘enrage’, <i>rozjet</i> ‘set in motion’
<i>s(e)-</i> ‘together; down’	<i>sloh</i> ‘style’	<i>svrchní</i> ‘upper’	<i>sejít se</i> ‘meet’; <i>sejít</i> ‘go down’
<i>sou-</i> ‘with, con-’	<i>souhláska</i> ‘consonant’	<i>současný</i> ‘contemporary’	<i>soustředit se</i> ‘concentrate’
<i>u-</i> , <i>ú-</i> ‘at, from, fix, complete, make successfully (factitive)’	<i>údolí</i> ‘valley’	<i>úplný</i> ‘complete’	<i>ujít</i> ‘escape’, <i>utéci</i> ‘run away’, <i>upevnit</i> ‘fasten’, <i>umučít</i> ‘torture to death’, <i>urychlit</i> ‘accelerate’
<i>v(e)-</i> ‘in’			<i>vejít</i> ‘enter’, <i>vložit</i> ‘insert’
<i>vy-</i> , <i>vý-</i> ‘out/up, succeed, use up’	<i>východ</i> ‘exit; east’	<i>vychudlý</i> ‘scant’	<i>vyjít</i> ‘exit, go up’, <i>vyhrát</i> ‘win’, <i>vypít</i> ‘drink up’
<i>vz(e)-</i> ‘up’	<i>vzestup</i> ‘ascent’		<i>vzejít</i> ‘go up’, <i>vzlétnout</i> ‘fly up’
<i>z(e)-</i> ‘exhaust, make (factitive), become’	<i>zmatek</i> ‘confusion’	<i>zbledlý</i> ‘turned pale’	<i>zbit</i> ‘beat up’, <i>zpomalit</i> ‘slow down’, <i>zkamenět</i> ‘turn to stone’

<i>za-</i> , <i>zá-</i> ‘beyond, to, cover, fix, away, begin, for a while’	<i>zahraničí</i> ‘foreign lands’; <i>záhuba</i> ‘destruction’	<i>záslužný</i> ‘deserving’	<i>zajít</i> ‘go beyond, drop in’, <i>zamilovat se</i> ‘fall in love’, <i>zahojit</i> ‘heal up’, <i>zapamatovat</i> ‘fix in memory’, <i>zahnat</i> ‘drive away’, <i>zazvonit</i> ‘begin to ring’, <i>zatančit si</i> ‘do some dancing’
--	---	-----------------------------	--

Czech has borrowed a number of foreign prefixes, primarily from Latin. This table presents the prefixes that are most common and/or used productively, though in many cases these prefixes are simply part of a borrowed word rather than actually being a part of productive Czech derivation:

Prefix	Noun	Adjective	Verb
<i>a-</i> , <i>an-</i> ‘a-, non-, without’	<i>asymetrie</i> ‘asymmetry’, <i>analfabet</i> ‘illiterate person’	<i>apolitický</i> ‘apolitical’	
<i>anti-</i> ‘anti-’	<i>antitalent</i> ‘person with hopeless lack of talent’	<i>antisemitský</i> ‘anti-Semitic’	
<i>arci-</i> ‘arch-’	<i>arcinepřítel</i> ‘arch-enemy’		
<i>auto-</i> ‘auto-, self-’	<i>autoportrét</i> ‘self-portrait’	<i>autokritický</i> ‘self-critical’, <i>autobiografický</i> ‘autobiographical’	
<i>de-</i> , <i>dez-</i> , <i>dis-</i> ‘de-, di-, dis-, un-’	<i>decentralizace</i> ‘decentralization’, <i>deziluze</i> ‘disillusionment’, <i>disharmonie</i> ‘lack of harmony’	<i>degenerační</i> ‘degenerative’	<i>demaskovat</i> ‘unmask’, <i>dekódovat</i> ‘decode’
<i>ex-</i> ‘ex-, former’	<i>exministr</i> ‘former minister’		
<i>hyper-</i> ‘hyper-, ultra-’	<i>hyperkriticismus</i> ‘hypercriticism’	<i>hypermoderní</i> ‘ultramodern’	
<i>i-</i> , <i>im-</i> ‘i-, im-, un-’	<i>imobilizace</i> ‘immobilization’	<i>ireální</i> ‘unreal’	<i>imobilizovat</i> ‘immobilize’
<i>infra-</i> ‘infra-’		<i>infračervený</i> ‘infrared’	
<i>kontra-</i> ‘counter-’	<i>kontrašpionáž</i> ‘counter-intelligence’	<i>kontrarevoluční</i> ‘counter-revolutionary’	<i>kontrasignovat</i> ‘countersign’

Prefix	Noun	Adjective	Verb
<i>kvazi-</i> ‘quasi-’		<i>kvazivědecký</i> ‘quasi-scientific’	
<i>makro-</i> ‘macro-’	<i>makromolekula</i> ‘macromolecule’	<i>makroekonomický</i> ‘macroeconomic’	
<i>maxi-</i> ‘maxi-’	<i>maxikabát</i> ‘long coat’		
<i>mikro-</i> ‘micro-’	<i>mikrovlna</i> ‘microwave’	<i>mikroekonomický</i> ‘microeconomic’	
<i>mini-</i> ‘mini-’	<i>minisukně</i> ‘miniskirt’		
<i>post-</i> ‘post-’	<i>postmodernismus</i> ‘postmodernism’	<i>postkomunistický</i> ‘postcommunist’	
<i>pro-</i> ‘pro-, vice’	<i>prorektor</i> ‘vice rector’	<i>proněmecký</i> ‘pro-German’	
<i>pseudo-</i> ‘pseudo-’	<i>pseudomění</i> ‘pseudo-art’	<i>pseudogotický</i> ‘pseudo-Gothic’	
<i>re-</i> ‘re-’	<i>rekvalifikace</i> ‘requalification’		<i>rekonstruovat</i> ‘reconstruct, rebuild’
<i>super-</i> ‘super-’	<i>supervelmoc</i> ‘super-power’		
<i>tele-</i> ‘tele-’	<i>telekomunikace</i> ‘telecommunication’		
<i>termo-</i> ‘thermo-’	<i>termoplast</i> ‘thermoplastic’	<i>termonukleární</i> ‘thermonuclear’	
<i>trans-</i> ‘trans-’		<i>transatlantický</i> ‘trans-Atlantic’	<i>transformovat</i> ‘transform’
<i>ultra-</i> ‘ultra’	<i>ultrazvuk</i> ‘ultrasound’	<i>ultrafialový</i> ‘ultraviolet’	

### 2.2.1.2 Derivation of nouns

#### *Derivation of nouns from nouns, adjectives, and verbs*

Most derived nouns are formed from other nouns or adjectives or verbs, as demonstrated in the following table, which lists suffix-ending combinations for deriving nouns of each gender, along with broad categories of meaning (‘bearer’ indicates that the noun refers to a person or thing that bears a given characteristic). As the examples illustrate, some derivations involve mutations or truncations of consonants or variations in vowel length, as well as vowel-zero alternations. Some suffixes and endings consist of a zero (i.e. , they contain no phonemes); zero suffixes and endings are represented by 0.

## Suffixes and Endings for Masculine Nouns

Suffix + Ending	Associated with Nouns	Associated with Adjectives	Associated with Verbs
-0+0 ‘action’			<i>dopad</i> [ <i>dopadat</i> ‘strike ground’] ‘impact’, <i>vjezd</i> [ <i>vjíždět</i> ‘drive in’] ‘driveway’, <i>návrh</i> [ <i>navrhnout</i> ‘propose’] ‘proposal’
-0+a ‘person’		<i>mizera</i> [ <i>mizerný</i> ‘wretched’] ‘wretch’	<i>popleta</i> [ <i>poplést</i> ‘confuse’] ‘muddler’
-áč+0, -ač+0 ‘place, bearer, agent, means’	<i>květináč</i> [ <i>květ</i> ‘flower’] ‘flower pot’	<i>břicháč</i> [ <i>břichatý</i> ‘pot-bellied’] ‘pot-bellied person’	<i>prodavač</i> [ <i>prodávat</i> ‘sell’] ‘salesman’, <i>vypínač</i> [ <i>vypínat</i> ‘turn off’] ‘off-switch’
-ák+0 ‘agent, group member, male, bearer, means’	<i>voják</i> [ <i>voj</i> ‘war’] ‘warrior’, <i>žabák</i> [ <i>žába</i> ‘frog’] ‘male frog’	<i>chudák</i> [ <i>chudý</i> ‘poor’] ‘poor thing’	<i>žebrák</i> [ <i>žebrat</i> ‘beg’] ‘beggar’, <i>padák</i> [ <i>padat</i> ‘fall’] ‘parachute’
-(č)an+0, -(i)án+0 ‘inhabitant, bearer, agent’	<i>Evropan</i> [ <i>Evropa</i> ‘Europe’] ‘European’, <i>Angličan</i> [ <i>Anglie</i> ‘England’] ‘Englishman’	<i>dlohán</i> [ <i>dlouhý</i> ‘long’] ‘long legged person’, <i>hrubián</i> [ <i>hrubý</i> ‘coarse’] ‘uncouth person’	<i>trhan</i> [ <i>trhat</i> ‘tear’] ‘ragamuffin’
-ař+0, -(k)ář+0, -ionář+0 ‘agent, group member, place’	<i>zubař</i> [ <i>zub</i> ‘tooth’] ‘dentist’, <i>rybář</i> [ <i>ryba</i> ‘fish’] ‘fisherman’, <i>revolucionář</i> [ <i>revoluce</i> ‘revolution’] ‘revolutionary’, <i>odbějenkář</i> [ <i>odbějená</i> ‘volleyball’] ‘volleyball player’, <i>snář</i> [ <i>sen</i> ‘dream’] ‘dream-diary’		<i>pekař</i> [ <i>péci</i> ‘bake’] ‘baker’, <i>čtenář</i> [ <i>číst</i> ‘read’] ‘reader’
-as+0 ‘bearer’	<i>klid’as</i> [ <i>klid</i> ‘calm’] ‘calm person’	<i>krut’as</i> [ <i>krutý</i> ‘cruel’] ‘cruel person’	
-c+e ‘agent’			<i>vůdce</i> [ <i>vodit</i> ‘lead’] ‘leader’

## Suffixes and Endings for Masculine Nouns

Suffix + Ending	Associated with Nouns	Associated with Adjectives	Associated with Verbs
-č+í 'agent'			<i>rozhodčí</i> [ <i>rozhodovat</i> 'decide'] 'referee'
-ec+0, -(ob)(in)ec+0, -ovec+0 'agent, inhabitant, group member, place, object, bearer'	<i>bohoslovec</i> [ <i>bohosloví</i> 'theology'] 'theologian', <i>Makedonec</i> [ <i>Makedonie</i> 'Macedonia'] 'Macedonian', <i>hitlerovec</i> [ <i>Hitler</i> ] 'follower of Hitler', <i>chudobinec</i> [ <i>chudoba</i> 'poverty'] 'poor house', <i>dílec</i> [ <i>díl</i> 'part'] 'section'	<i>blbec</i> [ <i>blbý</i> 'foolish'] 'fool', <i>kravinec</i> [ <i>kraví</i> 'cow's'] 'cow manure'	<i>herec</i> [ <i>hrát</i> 'play'] 'actor', <i>sportovec</i> [ <i>sportovat</i> 'do sports'] 'athlete'
-ek+0, -ásek+0 'bearer, result'		<i>svátek</i> [ <i>svatý</i> 'holy'] 'holiday', <i>bělásek</i> [ <i>bílý</i> 'white'] 'white cabbage, white butterfly'	<i>výrobek</i> [ <i>vyrobit</i> 'produce'] 'product'
-(n)ěř+0 'agent'	<i>bankéř</i> [ <i>banka</i> 'bank'] 'banker', <i>žoldněř</i> [ <i>žold</i> 'soldier's pay'] 'mercenary'		
-(ov)(n)ík+0 'agent, group member, place, bearer, means'	<i>kouzelník</i> [ <i>kouzlo</i> 'magic'] 'magician', <i>plukovník</i> [ <i>pluk</i> 'regiment'] 'colonel', <i>straník</i> [ <i>strana</i> 'party'] 'party member', <i>rybník</i> [ <i>ryba</i> 'fish'] '(fish)pond'	<i>parník</i> [ <i>parní</i> 'steam'] 'steamboat', <i>mladík</i> [ <i>mladý</i> 'young'] 'young person', <i>čajovník</i> [ <i>čajový</i> 'tea'] 'tea bush'	<i>úderník</i> [ <i>udeřit</i> 'strike'] 'shockworker', <i>budík</i> [ <i>budit</i> 'wake'] 'alarm clock'
-ín+0 'place, group member'	<i>kravín</i> [ <i>kráva</i> 'cow'] 'cowbarn', <i>čeledín</i> [ <i>čeled'</i> 'domestic helpers'] 'farmhand'		
-íř+0 'agent'	<i>hrnčíř</i> [ <i>hrnec</i> 'pot'] 'potter'		
-i(s)t+a 'agent, group member'	<i>klavírista</i> [ <i>klavír</i> 'piano'] 'pianist', <i>rasista</i> [ <i>rasa</i> 'race']		

## Suffixes and Endings for Masculine Nouns

Suffix + Ending	Associated with Nouns	Associated with Adjectives	Associated with Verbs
	'racist', <i>husita</i> [ <i>Hus</i> ] 'Hussite'		
- <i>k+a</i> 'agent'			<i>mluvka</i> [ <i>mluvit</i> 'talk'] 'blabberer'
- <i>l+0</i> 'agent'			<i>hrabal</i> [ <i>hrabat</i> 'rake'] 'greedy person'
- <i>och+0</i> 'bearer'		<i>lenoch</i> [ <i>lenivý</i> 'lazy'] 'lazybones'	
- <i>ot+0</i> 'action'			<i>dupot</i> [ <i>dupat</i> 'stamp'] 'stamping'
-( <i>l</i> ) <i>oun+0</i> , - <i>ouš+0</i> , - <i>out+0</i> 'bearer, agent'		<i>hezoun</i> [ <i>hezký</i> 'handsome'] 'handsome fellow', <i>chytrouš</i> [ <i>chytrý</i> 'smart'] 'smart-alec'	<i>bručoun</i> [ <i>bručet</i> 'grumble'] 'grumbler', <i>křikloun</i> [ <i>křičet</i> 'scream'] 'screamer', <i>žrout</i> [ <i>žrát</i> 'devour'] 'glutton'
- <i>t+0</i> 'action'			<i>dřevoryt</i> [ <i>rýt</i> 'carve'] 'woodcarving'
-( <i>i</i> ) <i>tel+0</i> 'agent'			<i>cestovatel</i> [ <i>cestovat</i> 'travel'] 'traveler', <i>majitel</i> [ <i>mít</i> 'have'] 'owner'

## Suffixes and Endings for Neuter Nouns

Suffix + Ending	Associated with Nouns	Associated with Adjectives	Associated with Verbs
- <i>0+ě</i> , - <i>č+e</i> 'young creature, bearer'	<i>slůně</i> [ <i>slon</i> 'elephant'] 'baby elephant'	<i>mláďe</i> [ <i>mladý</i> 'young'] 'baby'	<i>padavče</i> [ <i>padat</i> 'fall'] 'faller, fallen fruit'
- <i>0+o</i> 'abstraction'		<i>zlo</i> [ <i>zlý</i> 'evil'] 'evil'	
- <i>átk+o</i> 'bearer'		<i>neviňátko</i> [ <i>nevinný</i> 'innocent'] 'innocent babe'	
- <i>0+í</i> , - <i>ov+í</i> 'collective, abstraction'	<i>listí</i> [ <i>list</i> 'leaf'] 'leaves', <i>křoví</i> [ <i>keř</i> 'bush'] 'bushes'	<i>zdraví</i> [ <i>zdravý</i> 'healthy'] 'health'	
-( <i>ov</i> ) <i>isk+o</i> 'place'	<i>středisko</i> [ <i>střed</i> 'center'] 'center', <i>letovisko</i> [ <i>léto</i> 'summer'] 'summer resort'		<i>hledisko</i> [ <i>hledat</i> 'look'] 'point of view'



## Suffixes and Endings for Neuter Nouns

Suffix + Ending	Associated with Nouns	Associated with Adjectives	Associated with Verbs
-išt+ě, -ovišt+ě, -lišť+ě 'place, handle'	řečiště [řeka 'river'] 'river bed', pískoviště [písek 'sand'] 'sand box', hrabiště [hrábě 'rake'] 'rake-handle'		hřiště [hrát 'play'] 'playing field', parkoviště [parkovat 'park'] 'parking lot', koupaliště [koupat se 'swim'] 'swimming pool'
-iv+o 'material'			učivo [učit se 'study'] 'study materials', palivo [pálit 'burn'] 'fuel'
-(d)l+o 'agent, place, means'			mýdlo [mýt 'wash'] 'soap', divadlo [dívat se 'look'] 'theater', strašidlo [strašit 'scare'] 'ghost', zlobidlo [zlobit 'be naughty'] 'naughty person', sedlo [sedět 'sit'] 'saddle'
-(ov)n+é 'money'	kapesné [kapsa 'pocket'] 'pocket- money', školné [škola 'school'] 'tuition', poštovné [pošta 'mail'] 'postage'		vstupné [vstoupit 'enter'] 'entrance fee', jízdné [jezdit 'ride'] 'fare'
-(č)n+o 'abstraction'		tragično [tragický 'tragic'] 'the tragic', jsoucno [jsoucí 'existing'] 'existence, essence'	
-stv+í, -ctv+í 'abstraction'	členství [člen 'member'] 'membership', otročtví [otrok 'slave'] 'slavery', češství [Čech 'Czech'] 'Czechness', letectví [letec 'pilot'] 'aeronautics'	těhotenství [těhotný 'pregnant'] 'pregnancy'	

## Suffixes and Endings for Neuter Nouns

Suffix + Ending	Associated with Nouns	Associated with Adjectives	Associated with Verbs
<i>-tk+o</i> ‘means’			<i>sluchátko</i> [ <i>poslouchat</i> ‘listen’] ‘telephone receiver’, <i>vodítko</i> [ <i>vodit</i> ‘lead’] ‘leash’
<i>-(ov)(s)tv+o</i> ‘collective, groups of people, abstraction’	<i>žactvo</i> [ <i>žák</i> ‘pupil’] ‘school children’, <i>obyvatelstvo</i> [ <i>obyvatel</i> ‘inhabitant’] ‘population’, <i>Židovstvo</i> [ <i>Žid</i> ‘Jew’] ‘Jewry’, <i>svinstvo</i> [ <i>svině</i> ‘swine’] ‘filthiness’, <i>letectvo</i> [ <i>letec</i> ‘pilot’] ‘air force’, <i>členstvo</i> [ <i>člen</i> ‘member’] ‘membership (people)’		

## Suffixes and Endings for Feminine Nouns

Suffix + Ending	Associated with Nouns	Associated with Adjectives	Associated with Verbs
<i>-o+o</i> ‘abstraction, action, place’		<i>zeleně</i> [ <i>zelený</i> ‘green’] ‘green color’, <i>šír(e)</i> [ <i>široký</i> ‘wide’] ‘width’	<i>řeč</i> [ <i>říci</i> ‘say’] ‘speech’, <i>výdrž</i> [ <i>vydržet</i> ‘endure’] ‘endurance’, <i>pomoc</i> [ <i>pomoci</i> ‘help’] ‘help’, <i>pec</i> [ <i>péci</i> ‘bake’] ‘furnace’
<i>-o+a</i> ‘action’			<i>výroba</i> [ <i>vyrobit</i> ‘produce’] ‘production’, <i>útěcha</i> [ <i>utěšit</i> ‘comfort’] ‘comfort’
<i>-o+á</i> ‘action’			<i>odbíjená</i> [ <i>odbíjet</i> ‘strike off’] ‘volleyball’, <i>dovolená</i> [ <i>dovolit</i> ‘allow’] ‘vacation’; formed via participles

## Suffixes and Endings for Feminine Nouns

Suffix + Ending	Associated with Nouns	Associated with Adjectives	Associated with Verbs
-(o)b+a, -(i)tb+a 'abstraction, action'		<i>chudoba</i> [ <i>chudý</i> 'poor'] 'poverty'	<i>léčba</i> [ <i>léčit</i> 'treat'] 'treatment', <i>modlitba</i> [ <i>modlit se</i> 'pray'] 'prayer'
-O+ě 'abstraction, action'		<i>výše</i> [ <i>vysoký</i> 'high'] 'height'	<i>koupě</i> [ <i>koupit</i> 'buy'] 'purchase', <i>schůze</i> [ <i>scházet se</i> 'meet'] 'meeting'
-en+a 'agent'	<i>pradlena</i> [ <i>prádlo</i> 'laundry'] 'laundress'		
-(e)(n)ic+e 'place, female, object, bearer, action'	<i>vinice</i> [ <i>víno</i> 'grapes'] 'vineyard', <i>lednice</i> [ <i>led</i> 'ice'] 'refrigerator', <i>hudebnice</i> [ <i>hudebník</i> 'musician'] 'female musician', <i>hadice</i> [ <i>had</i> 'snake'] 'hose'	<i>levice</i> [ <i>levý</i> 'left'] 'left hand', <i>šachovnice</i> [ <i>šachový</i> 'chess'] 'chessboard'	<i>strkanice</i> [ <i>strkat</i> 'jostle'] 'jostling', <i>chumelenice</i> [ <i>chumelit</i> 'snow heavily'] 'blizzard'
-(ov)in+a, -štin+a 'place, unit, language, collective, material, abstraction, result'	<i>březina</i> [ <i>bříza</i> 'birch'] 'birch grove', <i>bažina</i> [ <i>bahno</i> 'mud'] 'marsh', <i>křovina</i> [ <i>křoví</i> 'bushes'] 'shrubbery', <i>švejkovina</i> [ <i>Švejk</i> ] 'Švejk-like behavior', <i>oblomovština</i> [ <i>Oblomov</i> ] 'Oblomov-like behavior'	<i>čeština</i> [ <i>český</i> 'Czech'] 'Czech language', <i>medvědina</i> [ <i>medvěd</i> ] 'bear's'] 'bearskin', <i>bílkovina</i> [ <i>bílkový</i> 'protein'] 'protein', <i>trhavina</i> [ <i>trhavý</i> 'explosive'] 'explosive', <i>nížina</i> [ <i>nížký</i> 'low'] 'lowlands', <i>blbovina</i> [ <i>blbý</i> 'foolish'] 'nonsense'	<i>vidina</i> [ <i>vidět</i> 'see'] 'vision', <i>piliny</i> (pl.) [ <i>pilovat</i> 'file'] 'sawdust'

## Suffixes and Endings for Feminine Nouns

Suffix + Ending	Associated with Nouns	Associated with Adjectives	Associated with Verbs
- <i>(ěn)k+a</i> , - <i>(en)k+a</i> , - <i>nk+a</i> , - <i>vk+a</i> , - <i>čk+a</i> , - <i>ink+a</i> , - <i>ovk+a</i> ‘place, female, unit, object, bearer, abstraction, means, result, action’	<i>cukřenka</i> [ <i>cukr</i> ‘sugar’] ‘sugar bowl’, <i>prodavačka</i> [ <i>prodavač</i> ‘salesman’] ‘saleswoman’, <i>Židovka</i> [ <i>Žid</i> ‘Jew’] ‘Jewish woman’, <i>jízdenka</i> [ <i>jízda</i> ‘ride’] ‘transportation ticket’	<i>sodovka</i> [ <i>sodový</i> ‘soda’] ‘soda water’, <i>voňavka</i> [ <i>voňavý</i> ‘aromatic’] ‘perfume’, <i>plavovláska</i> [ <i>plavovlasý</i> ‘blonde’] ‘blonde’, <i>šířka</i> [ <i>široký</i> ‘wide’] ‘width’	<i>pračka</i> [ <i>prát</i> ‘laundry’] ‘washing machine’, <i>sponka</i> [ <i>spojit</i> ‘join’] ‘barrette’, <i>odměrka</i> [ <i>odměřit</i> ‘measure’] ‘measuring cup’, <i>sbírka</i> [ <i>sbírat</i> ‘collect’] ‘collection’, <i>výjimka</i> [ <i>vyjímat</i> ‘take out’] ‘exception’, <i>ukolébavka</i> [ <i>ukolébat</i> ‘sing to sleep’] ‘lullaby’, <i>zabijačka</i> [ <i>zabíjet</i> ‘slaughter’] ‘pig slaughtering’, <i>potvrzenka</i> [ <i>potvrdit</i> ‘confirm’] ‘receipt’
- <i>(ov)n+a</i> , - <i>árn+a</i> , - <i>írn+a</i> , - <i>teln+a</i> ‘place, female, agent’	<i>tělocvična</i> [ <i>tělocvik</i> ‘exercise’] ‘gymnasium’, <i>knihovna</i> [ <i>kniha</i> ‘book’] ‘library’, <i>konírna</i> [ <i>kůň</i> ‘horse’] ‘stable’, <i>kněžna</i> [ <i>kníže</i> ‘prince’] ‘princess’, <i>královna</i> [ <i>král</i> ‘king’] ‘queen’, <i>drbna</i> [ <i>drby</i> ‘gossip’] ‘gossiper’,		<i>čistírna</i> [ <i>čistit</i> ‘clean’] ‘dry cleaning shop’, <i>spořitelna</i> [ <i>spořit</i> ‘save’] ‘savings bank’, <i>plovárna</i> [ <i>plovat (plavat)</i> ‘swim’] ‘swimming pool’
- <i>oň+0</i> , - <i>eň+0</i> ‘fruit or nut tree’	<i>jabloň</i> [ <i>jablko</i> ‘apple’] ‘apple tree’, <i>hrušeň</i> [ <i>hruška</i> ‘pear’] ‘pear tree’		
- <i>(n)ost+0</i> ‘abstraction’		<i>blbost</i> [ <i>blbý</i> ‘foolish’] ‘foolishness’, <i>kritičnost</i> [ <i>kritický</i> ‘critical’] ‘critical attitude’	
- <i>ot+a</i> ‘abstraction’		<i>teplota</i> [ <i>teplý</i> ‘warm’] ‘temperature’	

## Suffixes and Endings for Feminine Nouns

Suffix + Ending	Associated with Nouns	Associated with Adjectives	Associated with Verbs
-ov+á ‘female, wife or female member of family’	švagrová [švagr ‘brother-in-law’ ‘sister-in-law (brother-in-law’s wife)’, Dostálová [Dostál ‘Mr. Dostál’] ‘Ms. Dostál’		
-t/-t’ +0 ‘action’			nenávist [nenávidět ‘hate’] ‘hatred’, výdut’ [vydout ‘swell’] ‘bulge, dilation’
-tv+a ‘action’			bitva [bít ‘beat’] ‘battle’
-ul+e, -uška+a ‘bearer’		bledule [bledý ‘pale’] ‘snowdrop’, světluška [světly ‘light’] ‘firefly’	
-(k)yn+ě ‘female’	bohyně [bůh ‘god’] ‘goddess’, přítelkyně [přítel ‘friend’] ‘female friend’		

*Derivation of nouns from adverbs, prepositional phrases, and numerals*

Some nouns are derived from adverbs, prepositional phrases, and numerals; in all cases this involves suffix-ending combinations that are also used for derivation from nouns, adjectives, and verbs.

The formant *-elk+0* creates nouns from adverbs and prepositional phrases: *dnešek* [*dnes* ‘today’] ‘today’, *pohlavek* [*po hlavě* ‘along head’] ‘slap’. *-ník+0* forms nouns from prepositional phrases, such as *nátělník* [*na tělo* ‘for the body’] ‘undershirt’, and also produces names for coins from numerals, such as *pětník* [*pět* ‘five’] ‘five-crown piece’. Masculine nouns in *-ák+0* are formed from ordinal numerals, yielding *čtvrťák* [*čtvrtý* ‘fourth’] ‘fourth-grader; quarter-liter; quarter (coin)’.

Feminine nouns with *-(n)k+a* are formed from prepositional phrases, giving *příručka* [*při ruce* ‘at hand’] ‘handbook’ and *podprsenka* [*pod prsy* ‘under breasts’] ‘brassiere’, and providing names for numbered items such as buses, highways and money, as in *sedmička* [*sedm* ‘seven’] ‘the number seven (a bus, a highway, etc.)’, *patnáctka* [*patnáct* ‘fifteen’] ‘the number fifteen’, and *stovka* [*sto* ‘hundred’] ‘the number one hundred; one hundred crown note’. *-(n)ic+e* likewise forms nouns from prepositional phrases, *naušnice* [*na uších* ‘on ears’] ‘earring’, and from numerals, in this case creating names for groups according to the number of members they contain: *dvojice* [*dvě* ‘two’] ‘pair’, *pětice* [*pět* ‘five’] ‘quintet’. Fractions are formed with *-in+a*, *šestina* [*šest* ‘six’] ‘sixth’, and plurals with this suffix are used to indicate anniversaries: *padesátiny* [*padesát* ‘fifty’] ‘fiftieth anniversary/birthday’.

Neuter nouns expressing locations, times and abstractions are very copiously formed from prepositional phrases using *-0+í* producing words like *zákulisí* [*za kulisami* ‘behind the

wings'] 'backstage', *předjaří* [*před jarem* 'before spring'] 'early spring' and *bezvětrí* [*bez větru* 'without wind'] 'windlessness', *zátiší* [*za tichem* 'while quiet'] 'still life'. Names for multiple offspring are formed from numerals with *-č+e*: *dvojče* [*dvě* 'two'] 'twin', *šesterče* [*šest* 'six'] 'sextuplet'.

#### *Derivation of nouns via compounding*

Pairs of stems (or roots) can be strung together to form nouns designating agents, means, places, actions, bearers of characteristics, and abstractions. Compounds can be formed either by simply adding two stems or by linking them with the connecting vowel *-o-*. The resulting compounds often belong to the realm of specialized terminology. Here are some examples.

No connecting vowel: *kovkop* [*kov* + *kopat* 'metal + dig'] 'metal miner', *strašpytel* [*strašit* + *pytel* 'scare + bag'] 'scaredy-cat', *okamžik* [*oka* + *mžik* 'blink of eye'] 'instant' (probably inspired as a loan translation of German *Augenblick*), *čtvrthodina* [*čvrt* + *hodina* 'quarter + hour'] 'quarter of an hour'.

Connecting vowel *-o-*: *zvěrolékař* [*zvěř* + *lékař* 'animals + doctor'] 'veterinarian', *horolezec* [*hora* + *lezec* 'mountain + climber'] 'mountain climber', *zákonodárce* [*zákon* + *dárce* 'law + giver'] 'legislator', *severovýchod* [*sever* + *východ* 'north + east'] 'northeast', *novomanžel* [*nový* + *manžel* 'new + spouse'] 'newlywed', *kulomet* [*kul(ička)* + *met* 'bullet + throw'] 'machine gun'.

A number of components occur in compounds with particular frequency. These formations often involve bare roots (as in *plynoměr* 'gas meter') rather than actual words. Here are some examples of these components and the words they form. Note that vowels *e* and *i* can also serve as connecting vowels, as in *velezrada* 'treason' and *vlastivěda* 'social studies'.

*sam-* 'self': *samohláska* [*sam* + *hláska* 'self + sound'] 'vowel', *samopal* [*sam* + *pal* 'self + fire'] 'automatic submachine gun'.

*sebe-* 'self': *sebevražda* [*sebe* + *vražda* 'self + murder'] 'suicide', *sebeobrana* [*sebe* + *obrana* 'self + defense'] 'self defense'.

*vše-* 'all, omni': *všežravec* [*vše* + *žravec* 'all + eater'] 'omnivore', *vševěd* [*vše* + *věd* 'all + knower'] 'omniscient person'.

*vel(e)-* 'big': *velezrada* [*vele* + *zrada* 'big + betrayal'] 'treason', *velryba* [*vel* + *ryba* 'big + fish'] 'whale'.

*-letí* 'number of years': *století* [*sto* + *letí* 'hundred + years'] 'century', *tisíciletí* [*tisíc* + *letí* 'thousand + years'] 'millennium'.

*-měř* 'measure': *vodoměr* [*voda* + *měř* 'water + measure'] 'water meter', *plynoměr* [*plyn* + *měř* 'gas + measure'] 'gas meter'.

*-met* 'thrower': *světlomet* [*světlo* + *met* 'light + thrower'] 'searchlight', *kulomet* [*kul(ička)* + *met* 'bullet + thrower'] 'machine gun'.

*-pis* 'write': *zeměpis* [*země* + *pis* 'land + write'] 'geography', *životopis* [*život* + *pis* 'life + write'] 'biography'.

*-sloví* 'word': *bájesloví* [*báj* + *sloví* 'myth + words'] 'mythology', *bohosloví* [*bůh* + *sloví* 'god + words'] 'theology'.

*-tisk* 'print': *barvotisk* [*barva* + *tisk* 'color + print'] 'color printing', *knihtisk* [*kniha* + *tisk* 'book + print'] 'typography'.

*-var* 'cooking place': *pivovar* [*pivo* + *var* 'beer + boiler'] 'brewery', *cukrovar* [*cukr* + *var* 'sugar + boiler'] 'sugar refinery'.

*-věda* 'science': *jazykověda* [*jazyk* + *věda* 'language + science'] 'linguistics', *vlastivěda* [*vlast* + *věda* 'homeland + science'] 'social studies'.

*Derivation of diminutive and augmentative nouns*

The phoneme *k* plays a prominent role in the derivation of diminutives, and is frequently used in combination with *č* or *n* to create suffix-ending sequences for each of the three genders. Diminutives will often have lengthened or shortened stem vowels and Type 2 consonant alternations, but in general they are subject to complex phonological rules that cannot be reliably predicted. Diminutives often double as terms of endearment or emotional involvement, although they can occasionally be used pejoratively. Their affective meaning is in most cases more significant than any indication of relative size. In some instances the meaning of the diminutive has been emancipated from the meaning of the noun from which it is derived, for example *kolíček* ‘clothespin’ is technically a diminutive of *kůl* ‘stake’, but for all practical purposes *kolíček* is now a separate lexical item.

Suffix	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine
- <i>(V)k-</i>	- <i>ek+0, -ík+0:</i> <i>potůček</i> [ <i>potok</i> ‘stream’] ‘little stream’, <i>domek</i> [ <i>dům</i> ‘house’] ‘little house’, <i>vožík</i> [ <i>vůz</i> ‘vehicle’] ‘cart’, <i>hadřík</i> [ <i>hadr</i> ‘rag’] ‘little rag’ extension - <i>oušek:</i> <i>dědoušek</i> [ <i>děd</i> ‘forefather’] ‘little grandfather’	- <i>k+o:</i> <i>bříško</i> [ <i>břicho</i> ‘belly’] ‘little belly’, <i>mlíčko</i> [ <i>mléko</i> ‘milk’] ‘little milk’ extension - <i>átko:</i> <i>zvířátko</i> [ <i>zvíře</i> ‘animal’] ‘little animal’	- <i>k+a:</i> <i>myška</i> [ <i>myš</i> ‘mouse’] ‘little mouse’, <i>knížka</i> [ <i>kniha</i> ‘book’] ‘little book’, <i>žabka</i> [ <i>žába</i> ‘frog’] ‘little frog’ extension - <i>uška:</i> <i>dceruška</i> [ <i>dcera</i> ‘daughter’] ‘little daughter’
- <i>Vč(e)k-</i> note: this suffix has a stronger diminutive force than - <i>(V)k-</i>	- <i>eček+0, -íček+0,</i> - <i>áček+0:</i> <i>domeček</i> [ <i>dům</i> ‘house’] ‘little house’, <i>bratříček</i> [ <i>bratr</i> ‘brother’] ‘little brother’, <i>synáček</i> [ <i>syn</i> ‘son’] ‘little son’	- <i>ečk+o, -íčk+o:</i> <i>městečko</i> [ <i>město</i> ‘city’] ‘little city’, <i>autíčko</i> [ <i>auto</i> ‘car’] ‘little car’	- <i>ečk+a, -íčk+a:</i> <i>knížička</i> [ <i>kniha</i> ‘book’] ‘little book’, <i>rybička</i> [ <i>ryba</i> ‘fish’] ‘little fish’
- <i>Vn(e)k-</i>	- <i>ánek+0, -ínek+0:</i> <i>nosánek</i> [ <i>nos</i> ‘nose’] ‘little nose’, <i>tatínek</i> [ <i>táta</i> ‘dad’] ‘daddy’		- <i>ink+a:</i> <i>tyčinka</i> [ <i>tyč</i> ‘pole’] ‘stick’

Augmentatives are less common than diminutives and are usually associated with pejorative connotations. *-isko* can be used to form augmentatives from nouns of all three genders: *psisko* [*pes* ‘dog’] ‘big dog’, *ušisko* [*ucho* ‘ear’] ‘big ear’, *babisko* [*baba* ‘old woman (pejorative)’] ‘big old woman’. *-ák* forms augmentatives from masculine nouns: *chlapák* [*chlap* ‘fellow’] ‘big fellow’. *-iznal/-ajzna* forms augmentatives from feminine nouns: *babizna* [*baba* ‘old woman’] ‘big old woman’, *tlamajzna* [*tlama* ‘mouth (of animals)’] ‘big maw’.

## 2.2.1.3 Derivation of adjectives

Like nouns, adjectives can be derived from nouns, adjectives, verbs, adverbs, and prepositional phrases. There are four multipurpose suffixes (plus their extensions) that derive adjectives from a variety of sources and for a variety of uses; these suffixes will be presented in the table. Suffixes used for only one type of derivation will be handled separately; this includes suffixes that create possessive adjectives, as well as suffixes and prefix-suffix combinations that derive adjectives from adjectives. Relational adjectives relate an item to another item or substance, denoting that the item they modify is connected with or made from the item the adjective is derived from. Qualitative adjectives describe a quality of the item they modify. Relational adjectives are formed much more productively than qualitative adjectives.

Suffix + Ending	Relational Adjectives Associated with Nouns	Qualitative Adjectives Associated with Nouns	Adjectives Associated with Verbs	Adjectives from Other Sources
-n+ý, -ěn+ý, -čn+ý, -cn+ý	<i>ovocný</i> [ <i>ovoce</i> 'fruit'] <i>dřevěný</i> [ <i>dřevo</i> 'wood']	<i>klidný</i> [ <i>klid</i> 'calm']	<i>vychloubačný</i> [ <i>vychloubat se</i> 'boast'] <i>kajícíný</i> [ <i>kát se</i> 'repent']	<i>přílišný</i> [ <i>příliš</i> 'excessively'] <i>mezibuněčný</i> [ <i>mezi buňkami</i> 'between cells'] 'intercellular'
-n+í, -ovn+í	<i>místní</i> [ <i>místo</i> 'place'] <i>hudební</i> [ <i>hudba</i> 'music']	<i>hlavní</i> [ <i>hlava</i> 'head']		<i>zvláštní</i> [ <i>zvlášť</i> 'particularly'] 'peculiar', <i>protivládní</i> [ <i>proti vládě</i> 'against government'] 'anti-governmental', <i>mezibankovní</i> [ <i>mezi bankami</i> 'between banks'] 'interbank'
-ov+ý	<i>čokoládový</i> [ <i>čokoláda</i> 'chocolate']	<i>růžový</i> [ <i>růže</i> 'rose']		<i>opravdový</i> [ <i>opravdu</i> 'really'] 'real', <i>nadzvukový</i> [ <i>nad zvukem</i> 'above sound'] 'supersonic'
-sk+ý, -ovsk+ý, , -k+ý,	<i>městský</i> [ <i>město</i> 'city'] <i>vesnický</i> [ <i>vesnice</i> 'village']	<i>kafkovský</i> [ <i>Kafka</i> 'Kafkaesque']		<i>loňský</i> [ <i>loni</i> 'last year'] 'last year's', <i>meziměstský</i> [ <i>mezi městy</i> 'between cities'] 'intercity'



The remaining suffixes that are used to create adjectives have a much more specific function, for example:

Qualitative adjectives can also be formed using *-at+yý*, *-nat+yý*, *-it+yý*, *-ovit+yý*, *-ovan+yý*, *-iv+yý*: *chlupatý* [*chlup* ‘hair’] ‘hairy’, *skalnatý* [*skála* ‘rock’] ‘rocky’, *písčítý* [*písek* ‘sand’] ‘sandy’, *kopcovitý* [*kopec* ‘hill’] ‘hilly’, *pruhovaný* [*pruh* ‘stripe’] ‘striped’, *plsnivý* [*plíseň* ‘mould’] ‘mouldy’.

Adjectives from verbs can be formed using *-l+yý*, *-il+yý*, *-av+yý*, *-lav+yý*, *-iv+yý*, *-liv+yý*, *-at+yý*, *-ut+yý*, *-utn+yý*, *-teln+yý*, *-iteln+yý*: *shnilý* [*shnit* ‘rot’] ‘rotten’, *změkčilý* [*změkcnout* ‘soften’] ‘softened’, *váhavý* [*váhat* ‘hesitate’] ‘hesitant’, *pichlavý* [*píchat* ‘prick’] ‘prickly’, *sedavý* [*sedět* ‘sit’] ‘sedentary’, *dychtivý* [*dychtit* ‘crave’] ‘eager’, *škodlivý* [*škodit* ‘harm’] ‘harmful’, *stojatý* [*stát* ‘stand’] ‘standing’, *tekutý* [*téci* ‘flow’] ‘liquid’, *mohutný* [*moci* ‘able’] ‘powerful’, *srovnatelný* [*srovnat* ‘compare’] ‘comparable’, *viditelný* [*vidět* ‘see’] ‘visible’.

Foreign borrowings can be integrated into Czech adjectival morphology using *-n+í*, *-(i)ck+yý*, or *-ov+yý*: *extrémní* ‘extreme’, *toxický* ‘toxic’, *golfový* ‘golf’.

#### *Derivation of diminutive, augmentative, and attenuative adjectives*

When adjectives are derived from adjectives, the result is always an adjective with a diminutive, augmentative, or attenuative meaning. There are nearly a dozen diminutive suffixes; here are some examples formed from the adjectives *malý* ‘small’ and *slabý* ‘weak’: *malíčkový*, *malinký*, *maličičký*, *malilinký*, *malininký*, *malinkatý* ‘very small’; *slaboučký*, *slabounký*, *slaboulinký*, *slabouninký* ‘very weak’. Augmentative adjectives are relatively infrequent, except *velikánský/velikanánský* [*veliký* ‘big’] ‘really big/really, really big’. The meaning of an adjective can be attenuated by adding *-avý* or using any of the following prefix-suffix combinations *na- -lý*, *při- -lý*, *za- -lý*: *zelenavý* [*zelený* ‘green’] ‘greenish’, *natvrdlý* [*tvrdý* ‘hard’] ‘a bit hard’, *příblblý* [*blbý* ‘stupid’] ‘rather stupid’, *zažloutlý* [*žlutý* ‘yellow’] ‘somewhat yellowed’.

#### *Derivation of possessive adjectives*

Possessive adjectives can be formed from person’s names and kinship terms using *-ův* for male possessors and *-in* for female possessors (the later causes Type 2 consonant alternations): *Martinův* ‘Martin’s’, *bratrův* [*bratr* ‘brother’] ‘brother’s’, *Alenin* ‘Alena’s’, *matčin* [*matka* ‘mother’] ‘mother’s’. Possessives can be formed from the names of animals using *-í* and its variants *-cí* and *-čí*: *kraví* [*kráva* ‘cow’] ‘cow’s’, *býčí* [*býk* ‘bull’] ‘bull’s’, *telecí* [*tele* ‘calf’] ‘calf’s’, *prasečí* [*prase* ‘pig’] ‘pig’s’.

#### *Derivation of compound adjectives*

There are two common means of forming compound adjectives, either using the linking vowel *-o-*, *jihoevropský* [*jih* ‘south’+ *evropský* ‘European’] ‘south European’, or using the genitive form of a noun compounded with an adjective, *pozoruhodný* [*pozoru* ‘attention’+ *hodný* ‘worthy’] ‘worthy of attention’.

#### 2.2.1.4 Derivation of adverbs and pronouns

Adverbs can be derived from bare uses of the instrumental case, *omylem* [= ‘error’] ‘by mistake’, as well as from prepositional phrases, *dopředu* [*do* ‘to’ + *předu* ‘front’] ‘to the front’ and the suffix *-mo*, *kradmo* [*krást* ‘steal’] ‘stealthily’. There are a number of components that variously attenuate or modify the meanings of interrogatives, both adverbs and pronouns. These forms are illustrated with examples using the adverb *kam* ‘where (direction)’ and the pronoun *kdo* ‘who’ (other interrogatives that can use some or all of these components are *co* ‘what’, *čí*

‘whose’, *jak* ‘how’, *jaký* ‘what kind of’, *kde* ‘where’, *kdy* ‘when’, *kolik* ‘how much/many’,  *který* ‘which’, *kudy* ‘by what path’, and *odkud* ‘from where’):

*jin-* ‘else’: *jinam* ‘headed somewhere else’

*kde-* ‘every/all possible’: *kdekdo* ‘everyone possible’

*-koli* ‘any-, -ever, quite a few’: *kamkoli* ‘headed anywhere at all, headed toward quite a few places’, *kdokoli* ‘anyone at all, many a person’

*lec-, leda-* ‘all manner of (sometimes pejorative)’: *leckam*, *ledakam* ‘headed just anywhere’, *leckdo*, *ledakdo* ‘any old person’, *leccos* ‘a thing or two’

*málo-* ‘hardly any-’: *málokam* ‘headed hardly anywhere at all, headed toward only a few places’, *málokdo* ‘hardly anyone at all’

*ně-* ‘some, any (especially in interrogatives)’: *někam* ‘headed somewhere’, *někdo* ‘someone’

*ni-* ‘no, not any’: *nikam* ‘headed nowhere’, *nikdo* ‘nobody’

*-si* ‘some- or other (uncertainty, usually used in past tense)’: *kamsi* ‘headed somewhere or other’, *kdosi* ‘someone or other’

*všeli-* ‘all sorts of, any old’: *všelikam* ‘headed toward all sorts of places’, *všelikdo* ‘all sorts of people’

#### 2.2.1.5 Derivation of verbs

Verbs engage in a variety of morphological processes, some of which (prefixation, imperfective derivation, formation of frequentatives, discussed in 2.1.5.4 -2.2.1.1) can be considered at least partially inflectional (though it can be argued that all these processes are derivational as well). Other morphological adjustments are unambiguously derivational, among them the formation of reflexives, factitive verbs, “becoming” verbs, diminutives, and the integration of foreign verbs and neologisms into the Czech verbal system.

##### *Verbs derived with the reflexives se and si*

The reflexive pronouns *se* and *si* appear with many verbs, and can serve one or more of the following functions: they can derive a reflexive verb from a transitive verb; derive a reciprocal verb from a transitive verb; derive an intransitive, passive, or impersonal verb from a transitive verb; or serve as an essential component of a verb that exists only in the accompaniment of *se* or *si*.

When forming reflexive verbs, *se* (the accusative reflexive) indicates that the verbal action is performed on the self (=subject), whereas *si* (the dative reflexive) indicates that the verbal action is performed for the self (=subject):

*Without se/si*

*česat někoho* ‘comb someone’s hair’

*koupit něco* ‘buy something’

*With se/si*

*česat se* ‘comb one’s own hair’

*koupit si něco* ‘buy something for oneself’

Reciprocal actions can also be signalled by *se* and *si*; the reciprocal meaning is valid only when the subject is plural:

*Without se/si*

*znát někoho* ‘know someone’

*milovat někoho* ‘love someone’

*důvěřovat někomu* ‘trust someone’

*tykat někomu* ‘say ty to someone’

*With se/si*

*znát se* ‘know each other’

*milovat se* ‘love each other’

*důvěřovat si* ‘trust each other’

*tykat si* ‘say ty to each other (be on a first-name basis with someone)’

*Se* can be used to create a variety of intransitive, passive, and impersonal verbs. The impersonal verbs are integral to impersonal constructions and are used only in 3sg neuter forms. Overall, *se* has a general intransitivizing function that it does not share with *si*.

*Without se*  
*nacházet* ‘find’

*vyřešit* ‘solve’

*dělat* ‘do’

*chtít* ‘want’

*pracovat* ‘work’

*jíst* ‘eat’

*With se*

*nacházet se* ‘be located’ *Kde se nachází letiště?* ‘Where is the airport located?’

*vyřešit se* ‘be solved’, cf. *To se vyřeší* ‘A solution will be found’

*dělat se* ‘be done’, cf. *Jak se to dělá?* ‘How is that done?’

*chtít se* ‘feel like’ *To se mi nechce* ‘I don’t feel like doing that’

*pracovat se* ‘work (as experience)’ *Tady se mi pracuje dobře* ‘I can work well here’

*jíst se* ‘eat (as experience)’ *Jí se tam dobře* ‘That’s a good place to eat’

Finally, there are a number of verbs that simply require *se* or *si*. Many of these verbs have uses or meanings that overlap with one or more of the three categories above:

*Some Verbs That Require se*

*smát se* ‘laugh’

*bát se* ‘be afraid’

*dívat se* ‘look’

*ptát se* ‘ask’

*setkat se* ‘meet’

*Some Verbs That Require si*

*sednout si* ‘sit down’

*lehnout si* ‘lie down’

*odpočinout si* ‘rest’

*zvyknout si* ‘get used to’

*vážít si* ‘appreciate, respect’

*všimát si* ‘notice’

The pronouns *se* and *si* also combine with prefixes to create derived verbs, often with nuances of doing things on a large or excessive scale, or to satisfaction. Here are a few examples: *naplakat se* [*plakat* ‘cry’] ‘do a lot of crying’, *začíst se* [*číst* ‘read’] ‘get all involved in reading’, *upít se* [*pít* ‘drink’] ‘drink oneself to ruin’, *vytancovat se* [*tancovat* ‘dance’] ‘get one’s fill of dancing’, *zazpívat si* [*zpívat* ‘sing’] ‘enjoy some singing’, *pospat si* [*spát* ‘sleep’] ‘get a good sleep’.

*Factitives in -it*

Factitives are transitive verbs formed from adjectives that denote ‘make X Y(adj)’. These verbs are often formed with *-it*, sometimes in combination with prefixes: *chladit* [*chladný* ‘cool’] ‘make cool’, *ostřit* [*ostrý* ‘sharp’] ‘sharpen’, *zjednodušit* [*jednoduchý* ‘simple’] ‘simplify’, *obnažit* [*nahý* ‘naked’] ‘expose’. Factitives can also be transitive verbs formed from nouns denoting ‘subject X to Y (noun)’: *hnojit* [*hnůj* ‘fertilizer’] ‘fertilize’, *solit* [*sůl* ‘salt’] ‘salt’, *usmrtit* [*smrt* ‘death’] ‘kill’.

*“Becoming” and “being” verbs in -at, -it, -ět, -nout*

Verbs with the meaning of “becoming” and “being” are formed primarily from adjectives and denote taking on a characteristic. With adjectival roots describing colors and the formant *-at*, the

reflexive *se* can be optionally added to suggest appearance or looking like a given color: *teplat* [*teplý* ‘warm’] ‘get warm’, *červenat (se)* [*červený* ‘red’] ‘turn red (appear red)’. Nouns (usually denoting professions) can serve as source material for verbs in *-it* meaning ‘be an X’: *pytláčit* [*pytlák* ‘poacher’] ‘be a poacher, do some poaching’, *zedničit* [*zedník* ‘mason’] ‘be a mason, do some masonry’. The formant *-ět* is more versatile, creating verbs meaning ‘become’, sometimes in combination with prefixes (*tmavět* [*tmavý* ‘dark’] ‘get dark’, *oněmět* [*němý* ‘deaf’] ‘go deaf’), and also providing verbs for making sounds (*kňučet* [*kňu* ‘whining noise’] ‘whine’, *bzučet* [*bz* ‘buzz’] ‘buzz’). Finally, *-nout* produces imperfective verbs from many adjectives, such as: *blbnout* [*blbý* ‘stupid’] ‘be/act stupid’, *mládnout* [*mladý* ‘young’] ‘grow younger’, *měkhnout* [*měkký* ‘soft’] ‘soften up’.

#### *Diminutive verbs*

Diminutive verbs are used almost exclusively in speaking with or about children and end in *-inkat*. The most common are *spinkat* [*spát* ‘sleep’] ‘sleep’ and *blinkat* [*blít* ‘vomit’] ‘spit up’.

#### *Foreign borrowings and neologisms with -ovat*

Most new verbs entering the lexicon, whether from foreign languages or from neologisms based on native morphology, do so by adding *-ovat*: *fotografovat* ‘photograph’, *inspirovat* ‘inspire’, *číslovat* [*číslo* ‘number’] ‘number’.

### 2.3 Morphology of Colloquial Czech

The aim of this section is to present only the most obvious examples and patterns of Colloquial Czech inflection. Colloquial Czech derivation uses the same inventory of morphemes as the literary language, albeit with certain differences in the distribution of frequency, which will not be addressed in this section. It should be understood that Literary and Colloquial Czech are not two distinct and separate registers, but rather constitute a continuum of grammatical as well as lexical features. Most grammatical features are shared across the continuum, and the remainder show a hierarchy of representation (some are relatively neutral, others relatively marked as either literary or colloquial variants). Some of the features identified as Colloquial Czech (CCz) below may be virtually universal for all speakers, whereas others are less frequent and or stylistically marked. Readers who desire greater detail on this topic are referred to Townsend 1990.

#### 2.3.1 Inflection of nouns

The single most pervasive feature of Colloquial Czech nominal inflection is an Ipl ending of *-ama/-ěma* for all three genders (replacing masculine and neuter endings in *-y/-i*, feminine endings in *-ami/-ěmi*, and yielding *-ma* for the *kost* type of feminine nouns). Compare the literary and Colloquial Czech Ipl forms for our head nouns: LCz *bratry* vs. CCz *bratrama* ‘brothers’, LCz *koši* vs. CCz *košema* ‘baskets’, LCz *malíři* vs. CCz *malířema* ‘painters’, LCz *kotly/-i* vs. CCz *kotlama/-ema* ‘cauldrons’, LCz *přednosty* vs. CCz *přednostama* ‘chiefs’, LCz *zachránci* vs. CCz *zachráncema* ‘protectors’, LCz *ženami* vs. CCz *ženama* ‘women’, LCz *růžemi* vs. CCz *růžema* ‘roses’, LCz *dlaněmi* vs. CCz *dlaněma* ‘palms of hand’, LCz *kostmi* vs. CCz *kostma* ‘bones’, LCz *městy* vs. CCz *městama* ‘cities’, LCz *nábřežími* vs. CCz *nábřežíma* ‘waterfronts’, LCz *slůňaty* vs. CCz *slůňatama* ‘baby elephants’. Other Colloquial Czech features relate only to a given paradigm or group of nouns.

Masculine nouns ending in a velar that undergoes a Type 1 alternation before the Lpl *-ích* in Literary Czech may receive *-ách* instead with no alternation in Colloquial Czech: LCz *o vojácích* vs. CCz *vo vojákách* ‘about the soldiers’. With some masculine hard stem nouns the expected Lpl *-ích* is regularized to *-ech*: LCz *v lesích* vs. CCz *v lesech* ‘in the forests’. In Colloquial Czech there is some preference for DLsg *-ovi* over *-i*: LCz *holiči/-ovi* vs. CCz *holičovi/-i*

‘barber’. The CCz forms *chleba* ‘bread’ and *sejra* ‘cheese’, equivalent to the Gsg partitive forms LCz *chleba*, *sýra*, have spread to the NAsg, eclipsing the functions of LCz NAsg *chléb*, *sýr*. CCz is also characterized by sporadic differences in vowel length, particularly shortening of *ů* and *í* in desinences. The neuter *-í* paradigm (see head noun *nábřeží* ‘waterfront’) tends to acquire adjectival endings in Colloquial Czech, creating forms such as CCz Gsg *nábřežího*, Dsg *nábřežímu*, Gpl *nábřežích*, all of which are represented by LCz *nábřeží*. The two feminine paradigms with Nsg ending in a consonant, the *-e/ě* type (head noun: *dlaň* ‘palm of hand’) and the *-i* type (head noun: *kost* ‘bone’) have become to some degree intermingled in CCz, which tends to prefer the *-e/ě* type endings for all nouns of both types, creating CCz forms such as *kosťich* vs. LCz *kostech* ‘bones’ and CCz *lodě* vs. LCz *lodě/lodi* ‘boat’.

### 2.3.2 Inflection of adjectives and adverbs

The two vowels that produce the most characteristic phonological features of Colloquial Czech, *é* (which shifts to *ý/í*) and *ý* (which shifts to *ej*), figure prominently in adjectival morphology, accounting for most of the differences between the LCz and CCz hard-stem paradigm below. Other distinctions include the replacement of LCz Ipl *-mi* with CCz *-ma* (cf. the above discussion of nouns), and the removal of gender distinctions in the Npl (including the Type 1 alternations for masculine animates, i.e., CCz does not have the masculine animate Npl *druzí* in the paradigm below), yielding a single genderless CCz NApI in *-ý*. The table below shows the CCz desinences that differ from their LCz equivalents in bold face:

<i>druhej</i> ‘second; other’				
	singular			plural
	masculine	feminine	neuter	(all genders)
N	<i>druhej</i>	<i>druhá</i>	<i>druhý</i>	<i>druhý</i>
G	<i>druhýho</i>	<i>druhý</i>	<i>druhýho</i>	<i>druhejch</i>
D	<i>druhýmu</i>	<i>druhý</i>	<i>druhýmu</i>	<i>druhejm</i>
A	<i>druhej/-ýho</i>	<i>drouhou</i>	<i>druhý</i>	<i>druhý</i>
L	<i>druhým</i>	<i>druhý</i>	<i>druhým</i>	<i>druhejch</i>
I	<i>druhým</i>	<i>drouhou</i>	<i>druhým</i>	<i>druhejma</i>

The CCz forms listed in this paradigm are not equally marked stylistically. In general, forms involving the shift of *é* > *ý*, particularly in the feminine paradigm, are less marked and more pervasive than the forms exhibiting *ý* > *ej*. The soft stem adjectival paradigm distinguishes CCz from LCz forms only in the Ipl, where CCz *prvníma* corresponds to LCz *prvními* ‘first’. There is, however, one soft adjective that exhibits the change of *í* > *ej*, CCz *cizej* ‘foreign, strange’, with plural forms GLpl *cizejch*, Dpl *cizejm* and Ipl *cizejma* corresponding to LCz Nsg masc *cizí*, GLpl *cizích*, Dpl *cizím*, Ipl *cizími*.

CCz avoids short form adjectives (except *rád* ‘glad’), using only long forms for adjectives and passive participles, and appending long form endings to all but the Nsg masc and neut forms of the possessive adjectives. Thus LCz *nemocen* ‘ill’ has the CCz counterpart CCz *nemocnej*, with a paradigm like *druhej* above, and the same goes for passive participles, e.g., LC *napsán*, *napsaný* vs. CCz *napsanej* ‘written’. Aside from Nsg masc *bratrův* ‘brother’s’ (sometimes shortened in CCz to *bratruv* and occasionally realized as *bratrovej*) and neut *bratrovo* (sometimes CCz *bratrový*), which are the same in both registers, CCz adds the endings from the *druhej* paradigm to *bratrov-* ‘brother’s’ and *sestřin-* ‘sister’s’.

CCz tends to generalize the productive comparative adjectival formant *-ější* to many stems that use *-ší* in LCz, for example CCz *čistější* ‘cleaner’ as opposed to LCz *čistší/čistější*.

The regular comparative adverb formant LCz *-ěji* can be replaced by *-ějc* in CCz, yielding CCz *častěji* vs. LCz *častěji* ‘more often’ and CCz *rychlejc* vs. LCz *rychleji* ‘faster’, though this is a rather marked feature. A relatively neutral feature of CCz is the exclusive preference of forms truncating final *-ě* for irregular comparative adjectives where LCz admits both forms in free variation: CCz *hůř* vs. LCz *hůře/hůř* ‘worse’; CCz *vejš* vs. LCz *výše/ výš* ‘higher’.

#### 2.3.4 Inflection of pronouns

The paradigm of the 1sg pronoun is considerably simpler in CCz, since all forms except the N *já* and I *mnou* can be realized as GDAL *mně*, with no distinction between enclitic and stressed forms (though the D enclitic form *mi*, standard for LCz, also appears frequently in CCz). The CCz replacement of Ipl *-mi* by *-ma* is carried out in all three persons, yielding CCz Ipl forms *náma* ‘us’, *váma* ‘you’ and *jíma* ‘them’. The nominative forms of 3rd person pronouns gain the CCz prothetic *v-* and the plural (as in the adjectival paradigm) shows no gender distinctions: *von* ‘he’, *vono* ‘it’, *vona* ‘she’, *voni* ‘they’. Aside from the distinction in the N, the 3sg masculine and neuter pronouns share a collapsed and simplified CCz paradigm of GA *jeho/ho*, D *jemu/mu*, L *něm*, I *jím* (where this last form can also be shortened to *jim*). After a preposition, CCz uses only GA *něj* (never *něho*), and uses only the accusative enclitic pronoun *ho* (never *jej*), although all variants coexist in LCz. CCz frequently lengthens the feminine accusative 3sg pronoun to CCz *jí* (cf. LCz *jí*), yielding a single form (alternating with *ní*) for the entire paradigm (except the N *vona* ‘she’).

Possessive pronouns and the demonstrative *ten* ‘this’ display the same CCz correspondences characteristic of adjectival paradigms, with *é > ý*, *ý > ej* (except in the 1sg), loss of gender distinctions in the plural, and replacement of Ipl *-mi* with *-ma*. For the pronouns *můj* ‘my’, *tvůj* ‘your’, and *svůj* ‘one’s own’ there is a strong CCz preference for uncontracted over contracted forms; thus CCz uses *moje* for Nsg neut/fem, Asg neut, Npl, Asg masc, and Apl, and *mojí* for 1sg fem. The sole CCz NApl form for ‘these’ is *ty*; note also the CCz GDLsg fem *tý* and Ipl *těma*. The LCz pronouns *týž*, *tentýž* ‘the same’ are not used at all in CCz (where they are replaced by *ten samej*).

#### 2.3.5 Inflection of numerals

*Jeden* ‘one’ is declined in CCz like *ten*, indicated above, however in counting and in compound numerals, it most frequently appears as CCz *jedna*: CCz *jednadvacet let*, *dvacet jedna let* vs. LCz *jed(e)nadvacet let*, *dvacet jeden rok*. CCz has a tendency to spread the *ou* diphthong throughout the paradigm of *dva/dvě* ‘two’, yielding GL *dvouch*, D *dvoum*, and *Idvouma* as alternates to LCz forms GL *dvou* and DI *dvěma*. The replacement of Ipl *-mi* by *-ma* motivates CCz *třema* ‘three’ and *štyřma* ‘four’, and there is a tendency to merge the genitive and locative forms of these two numerals, yielding GL *třeč*, *štyřeč*. Ordinal numerals exhibit the same variations in CCz that are characteristic of adjectives.

#### 2.3.6 Inflection of verbs

The CCz vowel shifts that are so prominent in the adjectival declension play almost no role in verbal paradigms, with the exception of a few monosyllabic infinitives which display *é > ý/í* (or simply shorten): LCz *mést* vs. CCz *míst/mest* ‘sweep’, LCz *nést* vs. CCz *nýst/nest* ‘carry’.

CCz replaces LCz 1sg *-i* with *-u* and 3pl *-í* with *-ou*: CCz *sleduju* ‘I follow’ (cf. LCz *sleduji*), CCz *sledujou* ‘they follow’ (cf. LCz *sledují*). The final *-e* in the LCz 1pl *-eme* ending is frequently truncated in all Type III conjugations in CCz: CCz *zvem* ‘we call’ (cf. LCz *zveme*), CCz *sledujem* ‘we follow’ (cf. LCz *sledujeme*). CCz shows a tendency to align the Type I and Type II conjugations by implementing parallel 3pl forms *-aj* and *-ěj*: CCz *dělaj* ‘they do’ (cf.

LCz *dělají*), CCz *soudějí* ‘they judge’ (cf. LCz *soudí*), CCz *trpějí* (cf. LCz *trpí*) ‘they suffer’, CCz *umějí* (cf. LCz *umějí*) ‘they know how’. Even irregular verbs conform, yielding CCz *spějí* ‘they sleep’, *chtějí* ‘they want’, *jedějí* ‘they eat’, *vědějí* ‘they know’. Outside of fixed phrases, CCz uses no gerunds whatsoever, and no participles save the past passive (predominantly with long forms). The remaining differences between LCz and CCz verb systems are limited to relatively small groups of verbs. Here is a selection of the most salient features:

Type III non-suffixed stems ending in an obstruent and suffixed stems ending in a consonant suffixed with *nou* show truncation of the final *-l* in the masc sg past form; with *nou* verbs an alternative ending is *-nul*: CCz *ved* vs. LCz *vedl* ‘he led’, CCz *nes* vs. LCz *nesl* ‘he carried’, CCz *pek* vs. LCz *pekl* ‘he baked’, CCz *tiskl/tisknul* vs. LCz *tiskl* ‘he pressed, printed’.

Type III non-suffixed obstruent stems in *h/k* have a CCz infinitive form in *-ct* corresponding to LCz *-ci*: CCz *píct/pect* vs. LCz *péci* ‘bake’.

Three Type III nonsuffixed *ij* verbs show a vowel shift in CCz: CCz *kreju, meju, reju* vs. LCz *kryji, myji, ryji* ‘I cover, I wash, I dig’.

Certain Type III suffixed *a* verbs can have imperative forms in *-ej* (like the Type I *aj* suffixed class): CCz *mazej*(coll: ‘get going!)/*maž* vs. LCz *maž* ‘smear’.

The two verbs CCz *mocht* vs. LCz *moci* ‘be able’ and CCz *pomocť* vs. LCz *pomoci* ‘help’ have the stem *můž-* throughout their non-past conjugations: CCz *po-můžu, po-můžeš, po-může, po-můžem, po-můžete, po-můžou* vs. LCz *po-mohu, po-můžeš, po-může, po-můžeme, po-můžete, po-mohou*. The imperative ‘help!’ also has different forms: CCz *pomož* vs. LCz *pomoz*. Similarly CCz *péct* ‘bake’ avoids some of the stem variation witnessed in its LCz counterpart *péci*: CCz non-past *peču, pečes, peče, pečem, pečete, pečou*, imperative *peč!* vs. LCz non-past *peču/peku, pečes, peče, pečeme, pečete, pečou/pekou*, imperative *peč!/pec!*

The verb *vzít* ‘take’ deletes the *z* in non-past and imperative forms in CCz: CCz *vemu, vemeš, veme, vemem, vemete, vemou, vem!* vs. LCz *vezmu, vezmeš, vezme, vezmeme, vezmete, vezmou, vezmi!*

### 3. Syntax

#### 3.1 Syntax of noun phrases

Czech syntax at the level of both the noun phrase and the clause is dominated by case. Within a noun phrase, a noun (or pronoun) and all its modifiers show agreement for case, as well as gender and number. Here are some examples of agreement in noun phrases:

Npl masc anim: *všichni dobří rodáci* ‘all good countrymen’

Gsg fem: *své milé ženy* ‘his dear wife’

Dpl masc: *našim starým přátelům* ‘our old friends’

Asg fem: *tu důležitou práci* ‘that important work’

Isg neut: *kterým českým městem* ‘which Czech city’

Case indicates the syntactic function of a given noun phrase, the relationship it bears to the verb and to other noun phrases, the latter often augmented by a preposition. Sometimes case (particularly the vocative and occasionally the dative) can also indicate pragmatic relationships between participants in the speech event. The specific syntactic functions of the cases will now be taken up in turn. In the examples below, the noun phrase in question will appear in bold face. This survey will also present sample lists of prepositions, verbs, and other words that trigger the use of various cases. When dealing with case it is important to note that Czech employs an abstract yet complex system of concepts that do not neatly match any English equivalents. There is therefore often no consistent correspondence between a given case meaning or preposition and its English gloss. The various uses of a given case are not independent of each other, but collectively represent a coherent network of meanings, and frequently overlap.

#### 3.1.1 The nominative case

##### 3.1.1.1 Naming functions

The nominative serves as the default case when there is no syntactic context, as when it names or labels items, and it is also the case used in dictionary entries. Although the vocative case is normally used when calling someone by first name or title, the nominative can also be used, particularly when the last name is preceded by the Vsg form *pane* ‘Sir!’, as in *pane **Novák*** ‘Mr. **Novák!**’.

##### 3.1.1.2 The subject of a clause

The grammatical subject of a clause is always marked in the nominative case (and constructions lacking a grammatical subject are relatively rare in Czech, though some will be noted under the dative and instrumental cases below). Here are some nominative subjects: *Dnes **děti** nemají školu* ‘**The children** don’t have school today’; ***My** taky nejdeme do práce* ‘**We** are also not going to work’; ***Co** se tady děje?* ‘**What** is going on here?’.

Unless special emphasis is needed, subject pronouns are usually omitted in Czech. Here are some examples of sentences without and with subject pronouns.

Neutral clauses showing omission

*Dokážeme to*

‘**We** will manage it’

*Jsem tady*

‘**I**’m here’

*Nevěděla, kdo to je*

‘**She** didn’t know who it was’

Emphatic clauses with pronouns

***My** to dokážeme*

‘**We (are the ones who)** will manage it’

***Já** jsem tady*

‘**(Well, at least) I** am here’

***Ona** nevěděla, kdo to je*

‘**(But) She** didn’t know who it was’



In the foregoing examples the speaker has a concrete person or persons in mind. *Oni* is also omitted when it corresponds to English *they* indicating no one in particular, just people in general: *Říkají, že zítra bude pršet* ‘**They** say it’s going to rain tomorrow (general statement, reporting what some people say or what was heard in a broadcast)’. A few verbs can be constructed without any subject at all, such as *Prší* ‘It is raining’ and *Sněží* ‘It is snowing’.

### 3.1.1.3 The predicate of copula sentences

In addition to the nominative subject, verbs meaning ‘be’ can contain a nominative predicate identifying a category that the subject belongs in or a modifier that applies to it, especially when the statement has general applicability. Here are some examples: *Soused je učitel* ‘(Our) neighbor is **a teacher**’; *Alkohol je jed* ‘Alcohol is **a poison**’; *Byl jsem spokojený* ‘I was **content**’; *Musíš být zdvořilý* ‘You have to be **polite**’. However, whenever the category or modifier is particularly relevant to a given temporal, spatial or other context (such as ‘in our town’ or ‘when we go to visit auntie’), the instrumental case is frequently used instead for this purpose; compare: *Soused je učitelem* ‘(Our) neighbor is **a teacher**’; *Musíš být zdvořilým* ‘You have to be **polite**’. Note also that it is possible to use the instrumental even for general statements, such as *Nejzákeřnějším jedem ze všech je alkohol* ‘Alcohol is **the most sinister poison** of all’.

### 3.1.1.4 Comparison and apposition

The comparative construction in Czech parallels the English *x is y-er than z*, where *than* is represented by *než* and *z* is marked with the nominative case, as in *Praha je hezčí než Bratislava* ‘Prague is prettier than **Bratislava**’.

When a category or title is followed by a proper name, it is sometimes possible to leave the proper name in the nominative (though sometimes it is necessary to put it in the case that the category or title is in, and sometimes both variants are acceptable). The nominative is acceptable for *v okrese Vyškov* ‘in **Vyškov** county’; only the locative can be used in *v řece Vltavě* ‘in the **Vltava** river’; but both the nominative and the genitive can be used in *do banky Bohemia/Bohemie* ‘to the **Bohemia** Bank’.

### 3.1.2 The genitive case

The genitive case serves as a landmark that something departs from, approaches, belongs to, or is located near. This discussion of genitive syntax is organized on the basis of these four general concepts which we designate, respectively, by “source”, “goal”, “whole”, and “reference”.

#### 3.1.2.1 “Source” meanings involving ‘from’

There are several prepositions that can be translated by English ‘from’, all of which use the genitive case. *Z* ‘from’ is perhaps the most versatile, and is used for departure from most physical (and metaphorical) locations: *Sestra přijela z Prahy* ‘(Our) sister has arrived from **Prague**’, *Kniha byla přeložena z francouzštiny* ‘The book was translated from **French**’. This preposition is associated with some verbs, such as *po-těšit se z* ‘derive pleasure from’, *zotavit/zotavovat se z* ‘recover from’, *vyloučit/vylučovat z* ‘exclude, remove from’. *Z* also serves as the foundation for complex prepositions *zpod* ‘from beneath’ and *zpoza* ‘from behind’. The preposition *s* ‘off of, down from’ is rather marginal; it specifies removal from a flat surface, and can always be replaced by *z*: *Lampa spadla selze stolu* ‘The lamp fell from **the table**’. When human beings serve as a point of departure, the preposition *od* is required: *Dostala jsem dopis od bratra* ‘I received a letter from (my) **brother**’. *Od* can mark other departure points as well, as we see in phrases like *Šli jsme směrem od věže* ‘We walked in the direction away from **the tower**’ and *Od neděle stále prší* ‘It has been raining constantly from **Sunday** on’.

In addition to prepositions, the genitive case is used in constructions with many verbs that express withdrawal from things, be it physical or emotional. Here are some such verbs:

<i>bát se</i>	‘be afraid of’	<i>vy-varovat/</i> <i>vyvarovávat se</i>	‘escape from, avoid’
<i>leknout/lekat se</i>	‘be frightened of’	<i>vzdát/vzdávat se</i>	‘give up’
<i>nabažít se</i>	‘get tired of’	<i>za-nechat/</i> <i>zanechávat</i>	‘relinquish’
<i>obávat se</i>	‘be apprehensive of’	<i>za-stydět se</i>	‘be ashamed of’
<i>ostýchat se</i>	‘be shy of’	<i>zbavit/zbavovat (se)</i>	‘rid (self) of’
<i>po-/vy-děsit se</i>	‘be terrified of’	<i>zdržet/zdržovat se</i>	‘abstain from’
<i>pozbýt/pozbývat</i>	‘lose’	<i>z-hrozit se</i>	‘be horrified at’
<i>pustit/pouštět se</i>	‘let go of’	<i>zřít/zřít se</i>	‘renounce’
<i>štitit se</i>	‘shun’		

### 3.1.2.2 “Goal” meanings involving ‘to’

The preposition *do* ‘to’ is used for arrival at various destinations as well as in temporal and other metaphorical uses: *Pojedeme do Prahy* ‘We are going to **Prague**’; *Do Vánoc budu doma* ‘I’ll be home before **Christmas**’; *Všichni se zamilovali do naší učitelky* ‘Everyone fell in love with **our teacher**’. Two groups of verbs denote various kinds of approach and are associated with the genitive case. For one group the use of the genitive is mandatory, but for the other the accusative is preferred, whereas the genitive is a somewhat literary or archaic-sounding variant. Note that in both groups a significant number of verbs are prefixed with *do-*, indicating approach, and that the presence of the intransitivizing *se* also plays a role in triggering the genitive (since a verb with *se* is nearly always intransitive, the destination is therefore not expressible as an accusative direct object, and the genitive “goal” meaning serves this purpose instead).

#### Verbs that Require the Genitive

<i>dočkat/dočkávat se</i>	‘wait for’	<i>týkat se</i>	‘concern, pertain to’
<i>dopustit/dopouštět se</i>	‘commit (a bad act)’	<i>ujmout/ujímat se</i>	‘take up, assume’
<i>dotknout/dotýkat se</i>	‘touch’	<i>všimnout/všímat si</i>	‘notice’
<i>dovolát/dovolávat se</i>	‘invoke, call’	<i>vyčkat /vyčkávat</i>	‘wait for’
<i>dožádat/dožadovat se</i>	‘beg for, demand’	<i>zastat/zastávat se</i>	‘stand up for, advocate’
<i>chopit/chápat se</i>	‘take hold of, seize’	<i>zeptat/ptát se</i>	‘ask, inquire’
<i>chránit se</i>	‘refrain from, avoid’	<i>zmocnit/zmocňovat se</i>	‘seize, take possession of’
<i>chytit/chytat se</i>	‘get caught on, cling to’	<i>zúčastnit/</i> <i>zúčastňovat se</i>	‘participate in’

In addition to these verbs, there are some adjectives, such as *hodný* ‘worthy of’, *schopný* ‘capable’ and *žádnostivý* ‘greedy, eager for’ (which commonly appear in their short forms with the genitive) that trigger the genitive in a parallel meaning, identifying the target of a person’s capability or greed in the genitive: *Takový člověk je schopen čehokoliv/žádnostiv slávy* ‘A person like that is capable of **anything**/eager for **fame**’.

## Verbs that Can Govern the Genitive or the Accusative

<i>dobýt/dobývat</i>	‘gain, get’	<i>po-/vy-užít/ po-/vy-užívat</i>	‘use, enjoy’
<i>dosáhnout/ dosahovat</i>	‘reach, gain’	<i>za-žádat</i>	‘desire, demand’
<i>po-přát</i>	‘wish’	<i>zneužít/zneužívat</i>	‘abuse’
<i>potřebovat</i>	‘need’		

## 3.1.2.3 “Whole” meanings involving ‘of’, possession, and category membership

The genitive case can be used for many of the purposes that English *of* serves, including the marking of part-whole relationships, possession, etc.: *střecha domu* ‘the roof **of the house**’, *členové naší organizace* ‘the members **of our organization**’, *žena souseda* ‘the neighbor’s wife’, *trest smrti* ‘the **death** penalty’, *člověk nesmírného bohatství* ‘a person **of vast wealth**’. Also like English *of*, the Czech genitive case is used to reduce clauses by linking agents, events, and patients:

Full Clause	Reduction	Reduced Version
<i>Dívka bledla</i> ‘The girl was turning pale’	event of agent	<i>blednutí dívky</i> ‘ <b>the girl’s</b> turning pale’
<i>Smetana složil operu</i> ‘Smetana composed an opera’	patient of agent	<i>opera Smetany</i> ‘ <b>Smetana’s</b> opera’
<i>Člověk (něco) dělá</i> ‘A man does (something)’	agent of event	<i>člověk akce</i> ‘a man <b>of action</b> ’
<i>Výbor vyjednal výsledek</i> ‘The committee negotiated a result’	patient of event	<i>výsledek jednání</i> ‘the result <b>of the negotiation</b> ’
<i>Člověk ztratil doklady</i> ‘A person lost the documents’	event of patient	<i>ztráta dokladů</i> ‘the loss of the documents’

Because some items can potentially serve as both agents and patients, this use of the adnominal genitive is occasionally ambiguous, as in: *krádež dětí* ‘the theft **of the children** (someone kidnapped them)’ or ‘**the children’s** theft (they stole something)’.

The genitive expresses this meaning similar to *of* in conjunction with numerous prepositions, prepositional phrases, and other words, among them:

<i>na dně</i>	‘on the bottom of’	<i>pomocí</i>	‘with the help of’
<i>na pokraji</i>	‘on the brink of’	<i>prostřednictvím</i>	‘by means of’
<i>na účet</i>	‘on the account of’	<i>škoda</i>	‘a waste of’
<i>na úkor</i>	‘to the detriment of’	<i>uprostřed</i>	‘in the middle of’
<i>na vrcholu</i>	‘at the height of’	<i>v duchu</i>	‘in the spirit of’
<i>na základě</i>	‘on the basis of’	<i>v oblasti</i>	‘in the field of’
<i>následkem</i>	‘as a result of’	<i>v roli</i>	‘in the role of’
<i>po stránce</i>	‘with respect to’	<i>včetně</i>	‘including’
<i>pod jménem</i>	‘under the name of’	<i>ve formě</i>	‘in the form of’

Amounts of things and substances are handled using the genitive to mark whatever is being counted or measured. The genitive is used after integers above five (see more on the syntax of numerals below), fractions, and indefinite numerals such as *mnoho* ‘much/many’, *málo* ‘little/few’, *několik* ‘several’, *tolik* ‘this much/many’, *kolik* ‘how much/many’, *trochu* ‘some’: *šest slovníků* ‘six **dictionaries**’, *desetina vteřiny* ‘a tenth of a **second**’, *mnoho studentů* ‘many **students**’, *málo vody* ‘little **water**’. This “partitive” meaning of the genitive was originally used even in the absence of a quantifier, e.g., *Dej mi vody* ‘Give me some **water**’ (now replaced by the accusative *vodu* or the use of a quantifier *trochu vody*). Unspecified quantification can be associated with certain verbs; small quantities are indicated by the genitive with *dodat/dodávat* ‘add’, *přidat/přidávat* ‘add’, *přibýt/přibývat* ‘increase’, *ubrat/ubírat* ‘reduce’, *ubýt/ubývat* ‘decrease’; whereas large quantities can be indicated by the genitive with verbs in *na-* (*se*) and *pře-* (*se*): *Matce přibylo vrásek* ‘Mother has gotten **some more wrinkles**’, *Napila jsem se vody* ‘I drank **my fill of water**’. The adjective *plný* uses the genitive for a similar purpose: *Dcera je plna naděje* ‘Our daughter is full of **hope**’.

### 3.1.2.4 “Reference” meanings involving ‘at’ with dates and other reference points

Calendar dates always appear in the genitive case, and the genitive can appear in certain other time expressions as well: *Dnes je osmého února* ‘Today is **the eighth** of February’, *Přijedu třídvacátého listopadu* ‘I will arrive **on the twenty-third** of November’, *Úroky se uctují každého čtvrtku* ‘Interest is calculated **quarterly**’. The preposition *za* uses the genitive case to express time periods demarcated by other events, such as *za války* ‘during the war’, *za komunismu* ‘during **communism**’; this meaning parallels the preposition *během* ‘during’, which likewise governs the genitive.

Other prepositions that indicate reference points in various domains are associated with the genitive:

<i>blízko</i>	‘near’	<i>okolo</i>	‘around’
<i>daleko</i>	‘far from’	<i>poblíž</i>	‘near’
<i>dle</i>	‘according to’	<i>podél</i>	‘along’
<i>kolem</i>	‘around’	<i>podle</i>	‘according to’
<i>kromě</i>	‘except’	<i>u</i>	‘near, by, at’
<i>místo</i>	‘instead of’	<i>vedle</i>	‘next to’
<i>nedaleko</i>	‘not far from’	<i>vně</i>	‘outside of’

Some of these prepositions (especially *kromě* ‘except’ and *vně* ‘outside of’) emphasize the mutually exclusive relationship between the reference point given by the genitive and another object. Taken to its extreme, absolute exclusion would imply absolute separation and inaccessibility. This extreme meaning is manifested in the genitive-governing preposition *bez* ‘without’ and in the genitive of negation which is quite archaic in Czech, surviving primarily in fixed phrases, such as: *Nemám slov* ‘I don’t have **any words** (I am tongue-tied)’, *Nemohl dechu popadnout* ‘He couldn’t catch **his breath**’. This exclusionary aspect of the “reference” meaning overlaps somewhat with the avoidance aspect of the “source” meaning of the genitive discussed above.

### 3.1.3 The dative case

The dative case marks an entity that is capable of serving as the subject of a further action, or one that can guide or otherwise affect an event. There are basically two kinds of dative uses in Czech, both of which entail experiences or actions directed toward the dative entity. One involves experiences of various sorts, such as receiving or losing something, appreciating

kindness, suffering from ill treatment, or simply enduring the passing of time and various environmental factors. The dative as an experiencer yields the indirect object, many instances of dative government, the use of the dative clitic pronoun *si* to indicate self-indulgence, as well as possessive and ethical uses. The other dative uses cluster around a competition that the dative entity is engaged in with the nominative entity. The competition can be a tie, in which case we see expressions of matching forces, or either the nominative or the dative entity can emerge as the victor. If the dative is the stronger competitor, expressions of submission (to the dative) are motivated. If the dative is the weaker competitor, we find expressions of domination.

The preposition *k* ‘to, toward, for’ plays a special role in the semantics of the dative, for it is the spatial basis for other meanings. This preposition combines the meaning of directionality (the sense of something moving in the direction of something else) with the meaning of control and independence on the part of the destination (which distinguishes the dative from the accusative). Given this combination, it is no surprise that when a human being is a destination, this is always expressed with the preposition *k*: *V sobotu pojedeme k **babičce*** ‘On Saturday we will go to **grandmother’s (to visit grandmother/to grandmother’s place)**’. The preposition *k* also participates in a number of prepositional and other phrases as well, among them: *v poměru k* ‘in relation to’, *vzhledem k* ‘in relation to; due to’, *nehledě k* ‘ignoring’, *se zřetelem k* ‘with regard to’, *směrem k* ‘heading toward’, *ve směru k* ‘in the direction of’, *s přihlednutím k* ‘with consideration for/of’, *ve vztahu k* ‘in relation to’, *přijít k **sobě*** ‘regain consciousness’, *přiznat se k* ‘admit to’, *náchylný k* ‘having a tendency to’.

### 3.1.3.1 “Experiencer” meanings involving ‘to’ and ‘for’

In this meaning, the dative marks the experiencer of giving and taking, good, evil, and other external factors; each of these uses will be discussed in turn.

In addition to the classic context for the indirect object, namely the verb *dávat/dát* ‘give’, as in *Advokát dal **pacientovi** svou vizitku* ‘The lawyer gave **the patient** his card’, there are many synonyms or near-synonyms to ‘give’ associated with this dative construction.

Synonyms and Near-Synonyms of ‘give’			
<i>darovat</i>	‘give as a gift’	<i>prodat/prodávat</i>	‘sell’
<i>dedikovat</i>	‘dedicate’	<i>předat/předávat</i>	‘hand over’
<i>dodat/dodávat</i>	‘add, deliver’	<i>předložit/předkládat</i>	‘present’
<i>doručit/doručovat</i>	‘deliver’	<i>přihrát/přihrávat</i>	‘pass (in sports)’
<i>koupit/kupovat</i>	‘buy’	<i>přinést/přinášet</i>	‘bring’
<i>nabídnout/nabízet</i>	‘offer’	<i>půjčit/půjčovat</i>	‘lend’
<i>nechat/nechávat</i>	‘leave (for)’	<i>sehnat/shánět</i>	‘get’
<i>obětovat (se)</i>	‘sacrifice (oneself) to/for’	<i>svěřit/svěřovat</i>	‘entrust’
<i>obstarat/obstarávat</i>	‘find, obtain, get (for)’	<i>udělit/udělovat</i>	‘bestow’
<i>odevzdat/odevzdávat</i>	‘hand in’	<i>ukázat/ukazovat</i>	‘show’
<i>odnést/odnášet</i>	‘take to’	<i>umožnit/umožňovat</i>	‘make possible’
<i>opatřit/opatřovat</i>	‘obtain, get (for)’	<i>věnovat</i>	‘give as a gift’
<i>podat/podávat</i>	‘hand, serve’	<i>v-nutit</i>	‘force upon’
<i>po-přát</i>	‘wish’	<i>vrátit/vracet</i>	‘return’
<i>poskytnout/ poskytovat</i>	‘provide’	<i>vydat/vydávat</i>	‘surrender’
<i>poslat/posílat</i>	‘send’	<i>vysvětlit/vysvětlovat</i>	‘explain’
<i>prezentovat</i>	‘present’	<i>zařídít/zařizovat</i>	‘arrange’

Some related nouns, such as *dárek* ‘gift’ and *obět* ‘sacrifice’ can also trigger the dative in this way: *Tady je dárek tobě* ‘Here is a gift for you’; *Jde o obět rodině* ‘This is a sacrifice for the family’.

If the subject of a sentence gets something for him/herself, the use of the dative reflexive pronoun *si* is motivated, yielding constructions like *Koupím si nový počítač* ‘I will buy myself a new computer’, *Už jsme si opatřili nutné dokumenty* ‘We have already obtained the documents we need’. This use of *si* also appears in idioms, such as

*dát si* (literally ‘give to oneself’) which means ‘order (food)’, as in *Dám si rybu* ‘I’ll have the fish’, and *vzít si* (literally ‘take to oneself’), which means ‘marry’, as in *Alena si vezme Richarda* ‘Alena will marry Richard’, or simply ‘take’, as in *Vezmi si deštník, bude pršet* ‘Take your/an umbrella, it’s going to rain’. Furthermore, verbs that denote the creation of things or ideas can be associated with the dative, since the act of creation makes items available to dative experiencers. This accounts for sentences like *Babička nám upekla dort* ‘Grandmother baked us a cake’.

A number of verbs regularly use *si* to indicate that a fact or possibility has become available to the subject, among them *všimnout/všímat si* ‘notice’, *uvědomit/uvědomovat si* ‘become aware of’, *připustit/připouštět si* ‘allow’. Note also the use of *myslet si* ‘think, have opinion’ (as opposed to *myslet* ‘think, engage in thinking’ or *myslet na* + accusative ‘think about, recollect’).

Czech treats the act of taking something from someone as analogous to giving something to someone, using the dative to mark the experiencer of loss just as Czech uses the dative to mark the experiencer of gain. Thus the verb *vzít/brát* ‘take’ and its synonyms appear with the dative in sentences like *Bratr mu vzal poslední korunu* ‘His brother took his last crown’.

#### Synonyms and Near-Synonyms of ‘take’

<i>čmáznout</i>	‘swipe’	<i>u-krást</i>	‘steal’
<i>odcizit/odcizovat</i>	‘misappropriate’	<i>vyfouknout</i>	‘snatch away’
<i>odebrat/odebírat</i>	‘take away’	<i>vyrvat/rvát</i>	‘wrest from’
<i>odejmout/odnímat</i>	‘take away’	<i>vy-trhat</i>	‘yank away’
<i>odstranit/</i>	‘remove’	<i>vyvlastnit/</i>	‘expropriate’
<i>odstraňovat</i>		<i>vyvlastňovat</i>	
<i>šlhnout</i>	‘pinch’	<i>zabavit/zabavovat</i>	‘seize’
<i>šťápnout</i>	‘pinch’	<i>zcizit/zcizovat</i>	‘appropriate’

The use of the pronoun *si* is less common with these verbs, since rarely does one take something from oneself, but it is possible to say things like *Konečně jsem si odstranil tu třísku* ‘I’ve finally gotten that sliver out (of my body)’. Just as verbs of creation can facilitate giving, verbs of destruction entail de facto removal, motivating sentences like *Záplava nám zničila dům* ‘The flood destroyed our house’.

A subject may merely present itself, rather than some other item, to a dative experiencer, and this use is instantiated by a variety of verbs entailing physical or imagined approach, as well as stative verbs involving belonging or accessibility.

Words Meaning 'give self to'			
<i>na-rodit se</i>	'be born'	<i>příslušet</i>	'be owed, belong to, pertain'
<i>nadběhnout/ nadbíhat</i>	'overtake, outrun'	<i>stačit</i>	'be enough'
<i>obětovat se</i>	'sacrifice self'	<i>stát/stávat se</i>	'happen'
<i>oddat/oddávat se</i>	'devote self'	<i>svěřit/svěřovat (se)</i>	'entrust (self)'
<i>patřit</i>	'belong'	<i>věnovat se</i>	'dedicate self'
<i>pro-jevit se</i>	'appear'	<i>vnutit/vnucovat se</i>	'force self on'
<i>představit/ představovat se</i>	'introduce self'	<i>zaprodat/zaprodáva t (se)</i>	'be traitor, sell (self)'
<i>přihodit/přiházet se</i>	'happen'	<i>zbýt/zbývat</i>	'be left for'
<i>přiblížit/přibližovat (se)</i>	'approach'	<i>zdát se</i>	'seem'
<i>připadnout/připadat</i>	'accrue; happen; seem'		

A number of adjectives trigger use of the dative motivated by the same semantics of 'bring the self to', among them *dostupný* 'accessible', *jasný* 'clear', *přístupný* 'accessible', *srozumitelný* 'understandable', *zjevný* 'obvious', *známý* 'known', *zvyklý* 'customary': *Jeho dům je všem dostupný* 'His house is accessible **to everyone**'; *Jeho cíl je všem známý* 'His goal is known **to everyone**'; etc. Occasionally this use of the dative is found in idioms, such as *jít/jet někomu naproti* 'go to meet **someone (who is arriving)**'.

Just as both giving and taking items can involve dative experiencers, both giving the self to and taking the self away can trigger the dative, motivating the association of the dative with various words, such as the following:

Words Meaning 'take self from'			
<i>chybět</i>	'be missing'	<i>umřít/umírat</i>	'die on'
<i>odcizit/odcizovat se, cizí</i>	'be(come) alienated'	<i>uniknout/unikat</i>	'leak, escape'
<i>odporučit/ odporoučet se</i>	'take one's leave of'	<i>uprchnout/uprchat</i>	'flee'
<i>odrodit/odrozovat se</i>	'defect'	<i>utéci/utíkat</i>	'run away'
<i>odrůst/odrůstat</i>	'outgrow'	<i>vyhnout/vyhýbat se</i>	'avoid; steer clear of'
<i>scházet</i>	'be missing'	<i>vymknout/vymykat se</i>	'wrench loose'
<i>ujet/ujíždět</i>	'ride away (causing one to miss a train, bus, etc.)'	<i>vzdálit/vzдалovat se</i>	'become estranged from'
<i>ujít/lucházet</i>	'escape'	<i>ztratit/ztrácet se</i>	'get lost on'

A number of verbs in Czech express the giving of messages, money, or gifts without requiring that these items appear as accusative direct objects. These words are associated with the dative case, creating constructions like *Děkuji vám za pomoc* 'I thank **you** for your help', *Musíme zaplatit číšníkovi* 'We have to pay the **waiter**'.

## Words Expressing the Giving of Messages, Money, Gifts

<i>dopsat/dopisovat</i>	‘write letters’	<i>přikývnout/</i>	‘nod’
		<i>přikyvovat</i>	
<i>kondolovat</i>	‘give condolences’	<i>připít/připíjet</i>	‘drink to’
<i>mávnout/mávat</i>	‘wave’	<i>připomenout/</i>	‘remind’
		<i>připomínat</i>	
<i>napsat/psát</i>	‘write’	<i>přispět/přispívat</i>	‘contribute’
<i>nařídít/nařizovat</i>	‘command’	<i>přisvědčit/</i>	‘consent’
		<i>přisvědčovat</i>	
<i>obětovat</i>	‘contribute’	<i>přítakat/přítakávat</i>	‘say yes’
<i>odmlouvat</i>	‘talk back to’	<i>přizvukovat</i>	‘second’
<i>odpovědět/odpovídat</i>	‘answer, correspond to’	<i>řící/říkat</i>	‘say’
<i>odzvoniť/odzváněť</i>	‘toll a bell for’	<i>signalizovat</i>	‘signal’
<i>po-blahopřát</i>	‘congratulate’	<i>slíbit/slibovat</i>	‘promise’
<i>po-děkovat</i>	‘thank’	<i>tykat</i>	‘say <i>ty</i> to’
<i>po-gratulovat</i>	‘congratulate’	<i>u-/za-smát se</i>	‘laugh at’
<i>po-hrozit</i>	‘threaten’	<i>vykat</i>	‘say <i>vy</i> to’
<i>pochlebovat</i>	‘fawn upon’	<i>vy-nadat</i>	‘insult’
<i>po-chlubit se</i>	‘boast’	<i>zalhat/lhát</i>	‘lie’
<i>po-kynout</i>	‘nod, wave’	<i>za-platit</i>	‘pay’
<i>po-lichotit</i>	‘flatter’	<i>za-rouhat se</i>	‘blaspheme’
<i>po-modlit se</i>	‘pray’	<i>za-salutovat</i>	‘salute’
<i>po-radit</i>	‘advise’	<i>za-spílat</i>	‘curse at’
<i>poručit/poroučet</i>	‘command’	<i>za-telefonovat</i>	‘telephone’
<i>po-stěžovat si</i>	‘complain’	<i>za-telegrafovat</i>	‘send telegraph’
<i>povědět/povídat</i>	‘tell’	<i>za-tleskat</i>	‘applaud’
<i>po-žehnat</i>	‘bless’	<i>za-volat</i>	‘call, telephone’
<i>prominout/promíjet</i>	‘forgive’	<i>za-zlořečit</i>	‘curse’
		<i>žalovat</i>	‘complain’

Many of these verbs can be used with the dative reflexive pronoun *si* in its reciprocal meaning, such as *tykat si/vykat si* ‘say *ty/vy* to each other’ and *dopisovat si* ‘write letters to each other’. Related words, such as *díky* ‘thanks to’ and *slib* ‘promise’, often exhibit the same dative syntax as these verbs: *Díky své neobvyklé inteligenci, nikdy nemusel mnoho studovat* ‘Thanks to his unusual intelligence, he never had to study much’.

Thus far we have seen the dative as the entity that experiences some gain or loss. In a more abstract realm, the dative can experience benefit or harm, and many words denoting benefit and harm are associated with the dative. This group of words overlaps with groups denoting ‘giving’ and ‘giving messages’.

## Verbs Expressing Benefit

<i>asistovat</i>	‘assist’	<i>prospěť/prospívat</i>	‘benefit’
<i>hodit se</i>	‘suit’	<i>slušet</i>	‘suit’
<i>líbit se</i>	‘appeal to’	<i>svědčit</i>	‘be good for’
<i>po-lahodit</i>	‘please’	<i>vyhovět/vyhovovat</i>	‘satisfy’
<i>pomoci/pomáhat</i>	‘help’	<i>za-chutnat</i>	‘taste good’
<i>po-přát</i>	‘wish (well), be kind’		



In addition to these verbs, a great number of adjectives expressing positive qualities can be used with the dative in a similar fashion, among them *milý* ‘nice, pleasant’, *nápomocný* ‘helpful’, *příjemný* ‘pleasant’ *vzácný* ‘precious’.

The fact that people often do things for their enjoyment provides further occasions to use dative *si*, as in *hrát si* ‘play’, *házet si* ‘throw’, and *kopat si* ‘kick’, all of which entail playing for fun. A great variety of action verbs can be prefixed in *za-* or *po-* with *si* to signify self-indulgence, such as *zavčičit si* ‘do some exercising **for fun**’, *popovídat si* ‘enjoy a chat’. There are also verbs that require *si*, such as *dřepnout si* ‘squat’, *po-hovět si* ‘indulge oneself’, *lehnout/lehat si* ‘lie down’, *oddechnout si* ‘take a breather’, *odpočinout/odpočívát si* ‘rest’, *odskočit si* ‘relieve oneself’, *sednout/sedat si* ‘sit down’, *po-stěžovat si* ‘complain’, *stoupnout si* ‘stand up’. Note also the idiom *říci si* ‘say so’, as in *Jestli budeš něco potřebovat, tak si řekni* ‘If **you** need something, just say so’.

Verbs Expressing Harm			
<i>hnusit se</i>	‘be disgusting’	<i>u-škodit</i>	‘harm’
<i>nesedět</i>	‘bother’	<i>vadit</i>	‘bother’
<i>překážet</i>	‘be in the way’	<i>znechutit!</i>	‘make (be)
		<i>znechucovat (se)</i>	disgusting’
<i>ublížít/ubližovat</i>	‘hurt’		

In addition to the verbs of harm listed in the table, it is possible to create dative-governing verbs meaning ‘hurt, punish’ by prefixing *na-* to verbs meaning ‘hit, beat, whip, etc.’, as in *nafackovat* ‘slap’, *naplácát* ‘spank’. As we saw above with adjectives denoting positive qualities, adjectives denoting negative qualities can also trigger this use of the dative, among them *nepříjemný* ‘unpleasant’, *odporný* ‘repulsive’, and *protivný* ‘adverse’.

The verbs of taking above assumed that the object being taken was somehow possessed by the dative experiencer. The dative can be used to express possession in other contexts as well, particularly in relation to inalienable possessions, namely body parts and family members, as in *Zlomil jí ruku* ‘He broke **her** arm’, *Dítě nám pláče v noci* ‘**Our** child cries at night’. This possessive meaning also motivates the use of *si* in expressions like *umýt si ruce* ‘wash **one’s** hands’, *vyčistit si zuby* ‘brush **one’s** teeth’.

The dative is furthermore an experiencer of various temporal, environmental, and affective factors, yielding impersonal expressions of age, comfort, and emotion, such as *Je mi 40 let* ‘I am 40 years old’, *Bude nám zima* ‘**We** will be cold’, and *Bylo mu smutno* ‘**He** was sad’. It is also possible to take an action and view it from the perspective of a dative experiencer by adding the reflexive *se* to verbs, as in: *Jak se ti chodí v těch nových botách?* ‘How does it feel (**to you**) to walk in those new shoes?’, *Pacientovi se už lépe dýchá* ‘**The patient** is breathing better now’. Note that this use extends to the idiom *jit o* ‘concern’: *Jde nám o život* ‘**Our** life is at stake’.

Feeling like doing something and succeeding at something are likewise expressible with the dative: *Když je nemocný, nechce se mu hrát* ‘**He** doesn’t feel like playing when/since he’s sick’, *To se ti nepovedlo/nepodařilo* ‘**You** didn’t succeed with that’.

The dative can be used for pragmatic purposes in clauses where it is not grammatically required, to suggest that the dative entity is experiencing the event, in order to capture the hearer’s attention or to express aggression or solidarity. This use of the dative is often called the “ethical dative”, and here are some examples:

To capture the hearer's attention: *Včera jsem **tí** měla silnou horečku* 'Yesterday I had a high fever (**you should care**)'.

Aggression: *Co jste **nám** tu ukradli?* 'What did you steal here (**on us, we're in charge and we're angry**)?'

Solidarity: *Ty zlé děti **nám** rozbily hračky, vid'?* 'Those naughty children broke **our** toys, didn't they? (**I sympathize with you**; said by an adult who is not a co-owner of the toys)'.

### 3.1.3.2 "Competitor" meanings involving 'against' and 'to'

The dative can mark a competitor that another item can be matched against, submit to, or be dominated by. These uses of the dative do not focus on a capacity to experience events, but are motivated instead by a comparison of the dative's potential to act as a subject with the actual subjecthood of a nominative entity. As in any competition, there are three possible outcomes: a draw, the submission of the nominative to the dative (i.e., the dative "wins"), or the domination of the dative by the nominative (i.e., the nominative "wins"). All three possibilities are realized in the grammar of Czech, and will be taken up in turn.

The following table lists words expressing matched forces associated with the dative case involving concepts such as equality, competition, retaliation, and resistance.

Words Expressing Matched Forces			
<i>kompensovat</i>	'compensate'	<i>překážet</i>	'be in the way'
<i>konkurovat</i>	'compete against'	<i>rovnat se</i>	'equal'
<i>na odpor</i>	'in resistance to'	<i>rovný</i>	'equal'
<i>naproti</i>	'opposite'	<i>úměrně (k)</i>	'proportionately to'
<i>napříč</i>	'athwart, transversely'	<i>v tvář</i>	'to face'
<i>navzdory</i>	'in spite of'	<i>vstříc</i>	'meeting'
<i>ob-hájit se proti</i>	'defend oneself from'	<i>vyrovnat/vyrovňávat se</i>	'match, be able to compete'
<i>odolat/odolávat</i>	'resist'	<i>vzdor</i>	'in spite of'
<i>odplatit/odplácet</i>	'repay, retaliate'	<i>vzdorovat</i>	'defy'
<i>odpovědět/ odpovídat</i>	'correspond to; answer'	<i>vzepřít/vzpírat se</i>	'oppose'
<i>oproti</i>	'as opposed to'	<i>za-bránit se</i>	'resist'
<i>podobat se</i>	'be similar'	<i>za-odporovat</i>	'oppose'
<i>podobný</i>	'similar'	<i>za-oponovat</i>	'oppose'
<i>po-mstít se proti</i>	'take revenge on' 'against'	<i>z-protovit se</i>	'oppose'

This meaning of the dative lends itself particularly well to the formation of reciprocal expressions with *si*, such as *odporovat **si*** 'oppose **one another**', *překážet **si*** 'get in **each other's** way'.

When the dative entity imposes its parameters on the nominative, we see the use of the dative with words expressing various kinds of inclination, tendency, and submission, as summarized in the following table. There is considerable overlap between this group of words meaning 'yield to', and the words meaning 'give oneself to' mentioned in section 3.1.3.1, such as *obětovat se* 'sacrifice self to', *věnovat se* 'dedicate self to'. Note that many of these words denote yielding in intellectual or emotional terms, such as those with meanings like 'be surprised at', 'believe', 'understand', and 'envy'.

Words Expressing Inclination, Submission			
<i>dostát/dostávat</i>	‘be true to, honor’	<i>podřítit/podřizovat se</i>	‘subordinate self to’
<i>důvěřovat</i>	‘trust’	<i>po-rozumět</i>	‘understand’
<i>dvořit se</i>	‘woo, court’	<i>povolit/povolovat</i>	‘give in to, indulge’
<i>hovět</i>	‘give in to, indulge’	<i>propadnout/propadat (se)</i>	‘become obsessed with, addicted to’
<i>klanět se</i>	‘bow to’	<i>přizpůsobit/přizpůsobovat se</i>	‘adapt to’
<i>kvůli</i>	‘due to, for the sake of’	<i>sloužit</i>	‘serve’
<i>náležet</i>	‘belong, be proper to’	<i>stranit</i>	‘side with someone’
<i>na-učit se</i>	‘learn’	<i>ustoupit/ustupovat</i>	‘yield to’
<i>obdiv</i>	‘admiration’	<i>u-věřit</i>	‘believe’
<i>obdivovat se</i>	‘admire’	<i>vděčit</i>	‘be indebted to’
<i>otročit</i>	‘slave for’	<i>vděčný</i>	‘grateful’
<i>poddát/poddávat se</i>	‘submit to’	<i>věrný</i>	‘loyal’
<i>po-divit se</i>	‘be surprised’	<i>vzdát/vzdávat se</i>	‘surrender to’
<i>podkuřovat</i>	‘toady to’	<i>za-holdovat</i>	‘pay homage to’
<i>podlehnout/podléhat</i>	‘succumb to’	<i>zavděčit/zavděčovat se</i>	‘be obliging to’
<i>podlézat</i>	‘kowtow to’	<i>závidět</i>	‘envy’
<i>podrobit/podrobovat se</i>	‘submit, conform to’		

Reciprocal uses are fairly common with this set of verbs, particularly *rozumět si* ‘believe each other’.

The use of the dative to mark an entity dominated by a nominative entity is relatively infrequent, but there are a few verbs associated with this meaning.

Words Expressing Domination			
<i>dominovat</i>	‘dominate’	<i>vévodit</i>	‘rule over’
<i>předsedat</i>	‘preside over’	<i>vládnout</i>	‘govern’
<i>těšit se</i>	‘have at one’s disposal’	<i>za-imponovat</i>	‘impress’
<i>učarovat/učarovávat</i>	‘enchant, bewitch’		

### 3.1.4 The accusative case

The accusative case is the case of destinations, marking the entity that something or someone arrives at or goes through. In an abstract sense the direct object of a verb is the destination of the verbal energy created by the subject of a sentence. Motion can bring items to a physical destination, and if the path is specified in any particular way (as a path to a place above, beyond, or in front of an item, for example), it will be expressed as a preposition plus the accusative case (see the list of prepositions below). A change of state is understood as moving into a place, and *v + A* can perform this task (also possible for *do + G*). The accusative is also implemented in other domains, such as time and purpose, and there are numerous words that are associated with the use of a preposition + A. The accusative case can alternatively signal a dimension of something that is measured or passed through. This dimensional meaning can be used for

expanses of time, but is applied to various physical and other domains by means of prepositions.

### 3.1.4.1 “Destination” meanings involving ‘to, for’ and the direct object

The accusative case can present destinations for action, motion, time, or purpose. The direct object is the target of the verbal action, rendered in the accusative case, as in *Sousedé otevřeli novou restauraci v centru* ‘Our neighbors opened a new restaurant downtown’. Bodily pain is expressed by putting the sufferer in the accusative case, as in *Sestru bolela hlava* ‘My sister had a headache’. The accusative case appears in elliptical constructions where the verb has been omitted, such as *Vodu!* ‘(Bring some) water!’, *Dobrou chut’* ‘Bon appetit’. An infinitive verb form can motivate the accusative, as in *Je vidět horu* ‘The mountain is visible’ (but note that the nominative case, *hora*, is also permissible here).

As mentioned above, aside from the use of *do* + G ‘to’ and the use of *k* + D for human destinations, all other destinations use a preposition + A. Note that events have a temporal destination, the time at which they take place, often expressed by *v* + A ‘on’, *za* + A ‘in (after time elapses)’, or *ob* + A ‘every other’, as in *Přijede za dva dny, ve středu; k nám přijíždí ob týden* ‘He’ll come in two days, on Wednesday; he comes to visit us every other week’. The following table lists the destinational prepositions and indicates some of the other domains they commonly refer to. Five of these prepositions (*na*, *o*, *po*, *přes*, *za*) also express dimensional meanings of the accusative, which will be handled together with other dimensional prepositions in the next subsection.

Prepositions	Glosses	Primary Domains
<i>mezi</i> <i>Kdo dal tu lžičku mezi vidličky?</i> ‘Who put this spoon among the forks?’ <i>Paleontologové zařazují dinosaury mezi ptáky.</i> ‘Paleontologists classify dinosaurs among birds.’	‘among, between’	space, categorization
<i>mimo</i> <i>Žijou mimo Prahu.</i> ‘They live outside of Prague.’ <i>Autobusy jezdí každý den mimo neděli.</i> ‘The buses run every day except Sunday.’	‘past, outside of, besides, except; outside of’	space, lists
<i>na</i> <i>Zítřejší půjdeme na koncert.</i> ‘Tomorrow we are going to a concert.’ <i>Musím si koupit šaty na všední den.</i> ‘I need to buy everyday clothes (clothes for everyday).’	‘(on)to; for; at; toward’	space, purpose
<i>nad</i> <i>Pověsili obraz nad krb.</i> ‘They hung the picture over the fireplace.’ <i>To je nad lidské síly.</i> ‘That’s beyond human capacities (too hard to do).’	‘to a place above, beyond’	space, measurement
<i>o</i> <i>Vzal vázu a mrštil jí o zem.</i> ‘He took the vase and smashed it against the ground.’ <i>Odevzdali jsme žádost o byt.</i> ‘We submitted a request for an apartment.’	‘against; (thing desired or taken)’	space, endeavors
<i>ob</i> <i>Pište ob řádek.</i> ‘Skip lines (write every other line).’ <i>Ob den pracuji doma.</i> ‘Every other day I work at home.’	‘every other, one away’	space, time

<i>po</i>	‘up to; for’	space, time, scales, lists
<i>Začervenala se až po <b>uši</b>.</i> ‘She blushed up to <b>her ears</b> .’		
<i>Budeme studovat dějiny umění až po <b>novověk</b>.</i> ‘We will study art history up to <b>the modern age</b> .’		
<i>Všichni důstojníci od kapitána po <b>plukovníka</b> chtějí lepší podmínky.</i> ‘All officers from the rank of captain to <b>colonel</b> want better conditions.’		
<i>pod</i>	‘to a place under, below; less than’	space, jurisdiction, amounts
<i>Zameteme ten prach pod <b>koberec</b>.</i> ‘We will sweep that dust under <b>the rug</b> .’		
<i>Tato otázka nespadá pod <b>mou kompetenci</b>.</i> ‘That question does not fall within (under) <b>my competence</b> .’		
<i>Neprodá chalupu pod <b>sto tisíc</b>.</i> ‘He won’t sell the cottage for less than <b>a hundred thousand</b> .’		
<i>pro</i>	‘for, due to, because of’	purpose, cause
<i>Jdu pro <b>vodu</b>.</i> ‘I am going for <b>water</b> .’		
<i>Strýc je oblíben pro <b>svou dobrotu</b>.</i> ‘Our uncle is loved because of <b>his kindness</b> .’		
<i>před</i>	‘to a place in front of, before’	space, legal responsibility
<i>Vyšli jsme před <b>dům</b> a dívali jsme se na ohňostroj.</i> ‘We walked out in front of <b>the house</b> and watched the fireworks.’		
<i>Zločinec byl předvolán před <b>soud</b>.</i> ‘The criminal was summoned to (before) <b>the court</b> .’		
<i>přes</i>	‘across; more than; ignoring, avoiding’	space, time, amounts, relationships
<i>Jeli jsme přes <b>most</b>.</i> ‘We rode across <b>the bridge</b> .’		
<i>Je mu přes <b>padesát</b>.</i> ‘He is over <b>fifty</b> .’		
<i>Křičeli jeden přes <b>druhého</b>.</i> ‘They outshouted each <b>other</b> .’		
<i>v</i>	‘to, in, into’	space, time, states of being, purpose
<i>Gorila se bila v <b>prsa</b>.</i> ‘The gorilla beat <b>its chest</b> (itself in <b>the chest</b> ).’		
<i>Zavolám v <b>jednu hodinu</b>.</i> ‘I will call at <b>one o’clock</b> .’		
<i>Pavel všechno obrátí v <b>žert</b>.</i> ‘Pavel turns everything into <b>a joke</b> .’		
<i>Naše organizace pracuje ve <b>prospěch</b> lidstva.</i> ‘Our organization works for <b>the benefit</b> of humankind.’		
<i>za</i>	‘to a place behind, beyond; (catching ) on, by; for’	space, time, purpose, priorities, replacements
<i>Slunce zašlo za <b>hory</b>.</i> ‘The sun went behind <b>the mountains</b> .’		
<i>Vzal ji za <b>ruku</b>.</i> ‘He took her by <b>the hand</b> .’		
<i>Za <b>týden</b> přijedou domů.</i> ‘In <b>a week</b> they will come home.’		
<i>Všchno kupuje za <b>hotové</b>.</i> ‘S/He buys everything for <b>cash</b> .’		
<i>Chceme vyměnit byt za <b>dům</b>.</i> ‘We want to exchange our apartment for <b>a house</b> .’		

Many words are associated with these destinational prepositions, such as *zlobit se na* ‘be angry at’, *pokuta za* ‘fine for’, *boj o* ‘struggle for’, *starat se o* ‘take care of’, *dárek pro* ‘present for’, *děk za* ‘thanks for’.

### 3.1.4.2 “Dimension” meanings involving ‘through, during’

Whereas the destinational use of the accusative treats the accusative entity as a simple point or undifferentiated object, the dimensional use focuses on some feature of the accusative entity that

is extended in a domain such as that of size, duration, or capacity. In this use, the meaning of the accusative is similar to the English preposition *through*. When used without prepositions, the dimensional accusative usually signals distances or durations through which an action takes place, as in *Malé dítě ušlo celý kilometr* ‘The small child went **a whole kilometer**’, *Plakal celou noc* ‘He cried **all night**’, although cost and weight can also be expressed this way, as in *Jogurt stojí jednu korunu* ‘Jogurt costs **one crown**’, *Takový slon váží tunu* ‘An elephant like that weighs **a ton**’. With prepositions, the dimensional accusative can mark extensions and comparisons in a variety of domains, the most important of which are listed in the following table:

Prepositions	Glosses	Primary Domains
<i>na</i>	‘to, at, for, approximately’	space, time
<i>o</i>	‘by (amount of difference)’	space, time, size, amounts, comparison
<i>po</i>	‘all through’	time
<i>přes</i>	‘across, all through, in spite of’	space, time, barriers
<i>s</i>	‘measuring up to, capable of’	capacity, comparison
<i>skrz</i>	‘through’	space
<i>za</i>	‘in, during’	time

Here are some example sentences to illustrate dimensional prepositional uses: *Přijela na týden, ale zůstala jen přes noc, a po celou dobu byla nervózní* ‘She came for **a week**, but stayed only **overnight**, and she was nervous **the whole time**’, *Naše miminko je o měsíc starší než vaše, ale stále nás probouzí dvakrát za noc* ‘Our baby is **a month** older than yours, but it still wakes us up two times a **night**’, *Mohl se dostat skrz všelijaké potíže, ale nebyl s to jí říci pravdu* ‘He could get through **all kinds of difficulties**, but he was not capable of telling her the truth’.

### 3.1.5 The vocative case

The vocative case does not serve any syntactic purpose within Czech sentences. Its role is extrasentential and pragmatic, indicating that the speaker is addressing the hearer. Note that the hearer will be referenced with second person verbal and pronominal morphology in any sentence that is adjacent to a vocative, as in: *Mišo, prosím tě, pojď sem!* ‘**Miša**, please come here!’

### 3.1.6 The locative case and “place” meanings involving ‘in, on, at’

The locative case is always triggered by a preposition. Of the five prepositions associated with the locative case, four are also associated with the accusative, and there is some contiguity between meanings of destination and location (cf. *na* + A ‘(on)to’ vs. *na* + L ‘on’, *o* + A ‘against’ vs. *o* + L ‘leaning on, against’, *po* + A ‘up to’ vs. *po* + L ‘along’, *v* + A ‘in(to)’ vs. *v* + L ‘in’). All of the locative prepositions can indicate spatial relationships of immediate or proximal location, and all of these prepositions can be deployed in other domains as well, as indicated in the table:

Prepositions	Glosses	Primary Domains
<i>na</i>	‘on’	space
<i>Na tom ostrově není ani pořádný obchod.</i> ‘There isn’t even a decent store on <b>that island.</b> ’		
<i>Co dnes máme na pořadě?</i> ‘What do we have on <b>our agenda</b> today?’		
<i>o</i>	‘about; leaning on; during; with’	space, time, measurement, knowledge/communication
<i>Nic mi o tom neřekl; nic o tom nevím.</i> ‘He didn’t tell me anything about <b>it</b> ; I don’t know anything about <b>it.</b> ’		
<i>Stařec chodí o holi.</i> ‘The old man walks leaning on a <b>cane.</b> ’		
<i>O Vánocích budeme pryč.</i> ‘We will be gone during <b>Christmastime.</b> ’		
<i>Mají jen malý byt o dvou pokojích.</i> ‘They have just a small <b>two-room</b> apartment (with <b>two rooms.</b> )’		
<i>po</i>	‘after; along, around; for; each’	space, time, endeavors, distribution
<i>Po dešti všichni chodí po lese a hledají houby.</i> ‘After a <b>rain</b> everyone walks around <b>the forest</b> and looks for mushrooms.’		
<i>Vyšetřovatelé pátrají po pachateli.</i> ‘The investigators are searching for <b>the culprit.</b> ’		
<i>Jablka jsou po třech korunách za kilo.</i> ‘Apples are <b>three crowns</b> a kilo.’		
<i>Je po dvou.</i> ‘It’s two-all (tennis).’		
<i>při</i>	‘by, near; during; with’	space, time, states, accompaniment
<i>Klavír stojí při zdi.</i> ‘The piano stands by <b>the wall.</b> ’		
<i>Nemusíte asistovat při operaci -- pacient už není při životě.</i> ‘You don’t have to assist during <b>the operation</b> -- the patient is no longer <b>alive.</b> ’		
<i>Skutečný malíř nemůže pracovat při umělém světle.</i> ‘A real painter cannot work with <b>artificial light.</b> ’		
<i>v</i>	‘in’	space, time, states, media, knowledge, professions
<i>V zimě jsem ráda v teple v bytě.</i> ‘In <b>the winter</b> I like to be <b>inside</b> where it’s <b>warm</b> (in <b>the warmth</b> in <b>the apartment.</b> )’		
<i>Odborník ve fyzice vysvětloval ten jev v televizi.</i> ‘An expert in <b>physics</b> explained the phenomenon on <b>television.</b> ’		

By far the most important prepositions for spatial locations are *na* and *v*. *Na* + L is used for locations that are conceived of as surfaces (e.g., islands, open spaces), along with events and a collection of words that simply require *na*, whereas *v* + L is used with locations that are conceived of as enclosed containers (e.g., buildings, cities). Proximal location is the primary task of *při* + L, though it can also express contingency of time, space, or circumstance. *O* + L is most commonly used to signal the object of thought or communication, and *po* + L is most frequently deployed in the domain of time, where it means ‘after’. Various words are associated with these locative prepositions, such as *účast na/při/v* ‘participation in’, *uvažovat o* ‘consider’, *toužit po* ‘long for’, *přísahat při* ‘swear by’, *pokroky v* ‘progress in’.

### 3.1.7 The instrumental case

The instrumental case puts an entity into a peripheral relationship with either an event or another entity. An instrumental entity serves as a conduit for an event, realized as a path, a way or means to do something, an instrument, or a passive agent. In relation to another entity, the instrumental entity can be a label for it, an accompanying entity, or a nearby landmark (these latter two uses require prepositions).

## 3.1.7.1 “Means” meanings involving ‘through, by’

The most elementary kind of conduit for action is a path or opening along or through which something moves, as in the folk verse *Kočka leze dírou, pes oknem* ‘The cat crawls **through the hole**, the dog **through the window**’. This use can be extended to the domain of time in expressions such as *Tou dobou vůbec nevěděl, co má dělat* ‘**At that time** he had no idea what he should do’, *Zákon vstupuje v platnost dnem podpisu* ‘The law goes into effect **the day** it is signed’. Discontinuous paths through both space and time are also encountered: *Místy stále ležel sníh* ‘Snow still lay **in places**’, *Chvílemi se zdálo, že je vše ztraceno* ‘**From time to time** it seemed that all was lost’. Just as the words *path* and *way* are synonymous in English, the instrumental can be used to indicate ways to do things as well as paths, as in this sentence conflating the concepts of path and way: *Spory se řešily cestou trpělivého jednání* ‘Arguments were being solved **via** patient negotiation’; compare also *Žil životem vyhnance* ‘He lived **the life** of an exile’. A way to do something facilitates an action; likewise an instrument serves as both a means and a facilitator of an action, motivating uses like *Myla si ruce mýdlem* ‘She washed her hands **with soap**’. A prominent use of this meaning of the instrumental is with means of transportation, as in *Jezdíme metrem a tramvají* ‘We ride **the subway and the tram**’. In addition to instruments, there are some means that we would think of as causes, such as *Bolestí a strachem nevěděl, co dělá* ‘**Due to pain and fear** he did not know what he was doing’. The following table lists some verbs associated with the various “means” uses of the instrumental:

<i>disponovat</i>	‘have at one’s disposal’	<i>pohrdat</i>	‘despise’
<i>hospodařit</i>	‘manage’	<i>pyšnit se</i>	‘be proud’
<i>chlubit se</i>	‘boast of’	<i>šetřit</i>	‘save’
<i>kochat se</i>	‘enjoy’	<i>trpět</i>	‘suffer’
<i>obchodovat</i>	‘trade in’	<i>vládnout</i>	‘use masterfully’
<i>opovrhovat</i>	‘despise’	<i>zabývat se</i>	‘be interested in’
<i>plýtvat</i>	‘waste’	<i>zaměnit (co)</i>	‘replace (something)’

The adjective *jist(ý)* ‘certain of’ likewise triggers the use of the “means” instrumental: *Není si jist životem* ‘**His life** is in danger (he isn’t sure of **his life**)’.

Note also that a number of prepositions that govern the genitive are themselves instrumental entities, such as *prostřednictvím* ‘**through the mediation of**’, *vinou* ‘**due to**’, *vlivem* ‘**under the influence of**’, *zásluhou* ‘**because of**’, *následkem* ‘**as a consequence of**’.

Sensations are often expressed by means of the instrumental, as in *Sál zněl zpěvem* ‘The hall resounded **with song**’, *Jídlo chutnalo česnekem* ‘The food tasted **of garlic**’, *Tady to smrdí rybinou* ‘It stinks **of fish** here’.

Many words denoting movements require the body part or object moved to be in the instrumental, like the examples in the following table:



<i>házet oštěpem</i>	‘throw a javelin’	<i>hodit kamenem</i>	‘throw a stone’
<i>hýbat rukama</i>	‘move one’s hands’	<i>kynout hlavou</i>	‘nod one’s head’
<i>lomit rukama</i>	‘wring one’s hands’	<i>mávat rukou</i>	‘wave one’s hand’
<i>mrkat očima</i>	‘blink one’s eyes’	<i>mrštit novinami</i>	‘whack with a newspaper’
<i>točit klikou</i>	‘turn a doorknob’	<i>třást hlavou</i>	‘shake one’s head’
<i>vrhat koulí</i>	‘put the shot (track & field)’		

It is possible for a whole person to be subjected to this kind of movement, expressed in a subjectless sentence like *Petrem škublo* ‘Peter shuddered’ (although note that when a body part is involved, it is instrumental and the person is marked with the dative: *Škublo mu rukou* ‘His arm twitched’).

In the presence of passive participles, the instrumental can be used to express the agent of an action, as in *Studenti budou z biologie zkoušeni prof. Novákem* ‘The students will be tested in biology by Prof. Novák’, *Petr byl mučen pochybnostmi* ‘Petr was tormented by doubts’.

### 3.1.7.2 “Label” meanings involving ‘like, as’

With forms of the verb *být* ‘be’ the instrumental can be used to express a category that an item belongs in, giving it a label, such as: *Velryba je savcem* ‘The whale is a mammal’, *Velbloud je na poušti dopravním prostředkem* ‘In the desert the camel is a means of transport’. This kind of categorization can also be accomplished by adjectives, as in *Není podstatnou námítka, že o tom nevěděl* ‘The objection that he did not know about it is not a substantial one’. Because the verb *stát se* ‘become’ indicates change in the state expressed by *být* ‘be’, the instrumental can be used to categorize the results of becoming as well, yielding new labels, as in: *Otec se stal ředitelem* ‘Father became the director’. There are several verbs that are semantically contiguous with ‘becoming’, expressing concepts like ‘study (to become)’, ‘elect’, ‘announce’, as in: *Učí se zedníkem* ‘He’s studying to become a mason’, *Zvolili ho prezidentem* ‘He was elected president’, *Bude prohlášena doktorem věd* ‘She will be declared to be a doctor of sciences’. In a less common use, the instrumental can indicate that something takes on the role of the labeled category. In all such instances, the instrumental noun phrase can be replaced by *jako* ‘like, as’ + N: *Cítím se Čechem (jako Čech)* ‘I feel that I am a Czech (like a Czech)’, *Sestra sedávala modelem (jako model) adeptům umění malířského* ‘My sister used to sit as a model for beginning artists studying painting’, *Tu chalupu jsem dostala věnem (jako věno) od babičky* ‘I got this cottage from my grandmother as a dowry’.

### 3.1.7.3 “Accompaniment” meanings involving ‘with’

The Czech preposition *s* + I roughly corresponds to English *with* when it means ‘together with’, as in: *Jela jsem domů s tetou* ‘I rode home with my aunt’. This preposition is associated with a number of verbs, some of which are gathered in this table:

<i>bavit se s</i>	‘talk with’	<i>sblížit/sbližovat se s</i>	‘come together with’
<i>bojovat s</i>	‘fight with’	<i>souhlasit s</i>	‘agree with’
<i>dohodnout/</i>	‘make an agreement	<i>sousedit s</i>	‘be neighbors with’
<i>dohadovat se s</i>	with’		
<i>obchodovat s</i>	‘trade with’	<i>spřátelit se s</i>	‘make friends with’
<i>o-ženit se s</i>	‘get married to’	<i>stýkat se s</i>	‘meet with’

<i>počítat s</i>	‘reckon with’	<i>tahat se s</i>	‘wrangle with’
<i>po-hádat se s</i>	‘argue with’	<i>trápit se s</i>	‘suffer with’
<i>políbit/líbat se s</i>	‘exchange kisses with’	<i>vycházet s</i>	‘get along with’
<i>po-radit se s</i>	‘consult with’	<i>začít/začínat s</i>	‘start with’
<i>pro-mluvit s</i>	‘talk with’	<i>za-váhat s</i>	‘hesitate with’
<i>rozejít/rozcházet se s</i>	‘part ways with’	<i>zůstat/zůstávat s</i>	‘stay with’
<i>roz-loučit se s</i>	‘say goodbye to, part with’		

Nouns and prepositional phrases with related meanings are often associated with *s* + I as well, among them:

<i>konflikt s</i>	‘conflict with’	<i>v souhlase s</i>	‘in agreement with’
<i>spojení s</i>	‘connection with’	<i>v souladu s</i>	‘in harmony with’
<i>spokojen s</i>	‘satisfied with’	<i>v souvislosti s</i>	‘in connection with’
<i>v rozporu s</i>	‘in conflict with’	<i>ve srovnání s</i>	‘in comparison with’

Feelings can accompany actions, and it is possible in Czech (as in English) to say *dělat s radostí, láskou, odporem, chutí* ‘do with **joy, love, disgust, gusto**’. A disease can be a fellow-traveler in this way as well: *ležet v nemocnici s tyfem* ‘be in the hospital with **typhus**’. Also similar to English are the common phrases *vzít s sebou* ‘take with **oneself**’ and *mít s sebou* ‘have with **oneself**’. The preposition *s* also appears in various idiomatic phrases, such as *dát si s něčím práci* ‘take pains with, trouble oneself with **something**’, *obrátit se s prosbou/žádostí na někoho* ‘turn to someone with **a request/demand**’, *S dovolením!* ‘Please allow me!’. Infrequently *s* is used in time expressions, such as: *S pondělkem vyrazíme na pláž* ‘Come **Monday**, we’ll take off for the beach’.

There is considerable evidence that the preposition *s* + I is encroaching upon the semantic territory of the prepositionless “means” instrumental. Dictionaries list numerous words associated with the instrumental both with and without *s*, such as *chlubit se (s)* ‘boast’, *obchodovat (s)* ‘trade in’, *trpět (s)* ‘suffer’, *zabývat se (s)* ‘be interested in’. The presence or absence of the preposition *s* does not correlate with any appreciable difference in meaning for these words. In CCz the preposition *s* is often inserted when the instrumental case marks instruments, as in *Přijeli jsme s autem*, cf. LCz *Přijeli jsme autem* ‘We came **by car**’.

#### 3.1.7.4 “Proximal landmark” meanings involving ‘before, behind, above, under, between’

The instrumental case is associated with five prepositions that locate an item relative to an object or place. Two prepositions operate in terms of horizontal displacement, *před* ‘in front of’ and *za* ‘behind’; two prepositions denote vertical displacement, *nad* ‘above’ and *pod* ‘under’; and one preposition provides multiple reference points, *mezi* ‘between, among’. Most of these prepositions can also be deployed in domains other than space and participate in idiomatic expressions. The following table contains examples to illustrate the use of these prepositions:

Prepositions	Glosses	Primary Domains
<i>před</i>	‘before, in front of’	space, relationships, preferences, time
<i>Učitel stojí před <b>tabulí</b>.</i> ‘The teacher is standing in front of <b>the blackboard</b> .’		
<i>Žáci mají před <b>ním</b> respekt.</i> ‘The pupils respect <b>him</b> .’		
<i>Všichni mají rovnost před <b>zákonem</b>.</i> ‘Everyone is equal before <b>the law</b> .’		
<i>Nesmíte dávat jednomu přednost před <b>druhými</b>.</i> ‘You mustn’t prefer one over <b>the others</b> .’		
<i>Dostala jsem od něho před <b>týdnem</b> dopis.</i> ‘I got a letter from him <b>a week</b> ago.’		
<i>za</i>	‘behind’	space, idioms
<i>Zasadili jsme stromy za <b>domem</b>.</i> ‘We planted trees behind <b>the house</b> .’		
<i>Ten politik má něco za <b>lubem</b>.</i> ‘That politician has a <b>hidden</b> agenda (something behind a <b>strip of wood</b> ).’		
<i>Děti byly za <b>školou</b>.</i> ‘The children were playing hooky (were behind <b>the school</b> ).’		
<i>Už mám zkoušky za <b>sebou</b>.</i> ‘I’m already done with exams (have the exams behind <b>me</b> ).’		
<i>nad</i>	‘above’	space, relationships, emotions
<i>Erb visí nad <b>krbem</b>.</i> ‘The coat of arms hangs above the <b>fireplace</b> .’		
<i>Oslavujeme vítězství nad <b>nepřítelem</b>.</i> ‘We are celebrating our victory over <b>the enemy</b> .’		
<i>Zamyslela jsem se nad <b>problémem</b>.</i> ‘I fell into thought over <b>the problem</b> .’		
<i>pod</i>	‘under’	space, relationships, idioms
<i>Zajíc má své doupě pod <b>dubem</b>.</i> ‘The hare has its den under <b>the oak tree</b> .’		
<i>Zločinec vystupoval pod <b>cizím jménem</b>.</i> ‘The criminal went under <b>a false name</b> .’		
<i>Udělám to pod <b>podmínkou</b>, že mi pomůžeš.</i> ‘I’ll do it under <b>the condition</b> that you help me.’		
<i>mezi</i>	‘between, among’	space, time, relationships, amounts
<i>Muzeum stojí mezi <b>kostelem a divadlem</b>.</i> ‘The museum is between <b>the church and the theater</b> .’		
<i>Přijdu mezi <b>šestou a sedmou</b>.</i> ‘I’ll come between <b>six and seven</b> .’		
<i>Byl vždy mezi <b>nejlepšími žáky</b>.</i> ‘He was always among <b>the best students</b> .’		
<i>Dohoda mezi <b>velmocemi</b> je už podepsána.</i> ‘The agreement between <b>the superpowers</b> has already been signed.’		
<i>Cena je mezi <b>pěti až šesti korunami</b>.</i> ‘The price is between <b>five and six crowns</b> .’		

### 3.2 Numeral syntax

#### 3.2.1 The syntax of cardinal numerals

The numeral *jeden* ‘one’ is an adjective, and agrees in number, case and gender with the noun it modifies. Usually the number is singular, as in *jeden chlapec* ‘one boy’, but it can be plural with pluralia tantum nouns, such as *jedny nůžky* ‘one pair of scissors’. *Dva* ‘two’, *tři* ‘three’, and *čtyři* ‘four’ are likewise adjectives, and they agree in case with their nouns (in the nominative and accusative masculine *dva* s distinguished from feminine and neuter *dvě*): *dva chytrí kluci* ‘two smart boys’, *dvě chytré dívky* ‘two smart girls’, *dvě krásná města* ‘two beautiful cities’, *tři šikovní chlupci* ‘three clever fellows’, *čtyři otevřená okna* ‘four open windows’. *Pět* ‘five’ and higher numerals, as well as indefinite numerals (*mnoho* ‘many’, *několik* ‘several’, and the like), when in the nominative or accusative case govern the genitive plural of the count nouns they quantify. When in subject position, these numeral + noun phrase combinations trigger default

neuter singular verbal agreement. Elsewhere, in oblique cases, both the numeral and the noun phrase appear in the oblique case. Compare the following sentences:

*Byl tady jeden chlapec.* ‘One boy was here’.

*Mluvili jsme o jednom chlapci.* ‘We talked about one boy’.

*Dvě chytré dívky byly tady.* ‘Two smart girls were here’.

*Mluvili jsme o dvou chytrých dívkách.* ‘We talked about two smart girls’.

*Pět/mnoho nových studentů bylo tady.* ‘Five/many new students were here’.

*Mluvili jsme o pěti/mnoha nových studentech.* ‘We talked about five/many new students’.

With numbers above 20 syntax is dependent upon whether the numeral is used in its non-compounded (*dvacet tři* ‘twenty-three’) or compounded (*třiadvacet* ‘twenty-three’) form. The prescribed norm for non-compounded numerals is to follow the syntactic pattern of the final digit, with singular for numerals ending in *jeden* ‘one’, plural for those ending in *dva* ‘two’, *tři* ‘three’, *čtyři* ‘four’, and genitive plural (neuter singular verbal agreement) for all others. In CCz, these numerals often follow the syntax of compounded numerals, which always use the genitive plural/neuter singular pattern. Here are some more sentences for comparison:

*Dvacet jeden hoch byl tady/Jednadvacet hochů bylo tady.*

‘Twenty-one boys were here’.

*Dvacet dvě chytré holky byly tady/Dvaadvacet chytrých holek bylo tady.*

‘Twenty-two smart girls were here’.

*Dvacet pět nových studentů bylo tady/Pěťadvacet nových studentů bylo tady.*

‘Twenty-five new students were here’.

The compounded numerals are generally preferred in all contexts, and are strongly preferred in oblique cases, where *Mluvili jsme o dvaadvaceti chytrých holkách* ‘We talked about twenty-two smart girls’ is much more likely to occur than the synonymous *Mluvili jsme o dvaceti dvou chytrých holkách*.

Fractions are always followed by the genitive case: *Zbyla jen desetina diváků/paliva* ‘Only a tenth of the viewers/fuel remained’.

### 3.2.2 The syntax of telling time

Time on the hour follows the pattern of numeral agreement described above: *Je jedna hodina* ‘It is one o’clock’, *Jsou dvě hodiny* ‘It is two o’clock’, *Je pět hodin* ‘It is five o’clock’. Although it is possible in highly circumscribed situations (e.g., train schedules) to give the hour and minutes (*Je pět hodin dvacet minut* ‘It is five-twenty’), Czech normally uses a system of half and quarter hour reference points referring to the coming whole hour. The half hour uses the fraction *půl* ‘half’ followed by the genitive ordinal numeral (except for the cardinal in *půl jedné* ‘twelve thirty’) for the upcoming hour, thus *Je půl šesté* [Is half-NOM sixth-GEN] ‘It is five-thirty’. The quarter hours also use fractions, but they are followed by the preposition *na* and the accusative cardinal numeral representing the coming hour: *Je čtvrt na jednu* ‘It is a quarter past twelve’, *Je tři čtvrtě/čtvrti na sedm* ‘It is six-forty-five’. All other five-minute intervals are indicated by the following formula, referring to the upcoming half, quarter, or full hour: preposition *za* + *pět/deset minut* + (*jedna hodina/dvě hodiny/tři hodiny/čtyři hodiny/pět hodin*, etc.)/(*půl* + ordinal-GEN)/(*čtvrt/tři čtvrtě na* + cardinal-ACC): *Je za deset minut jedna hodina* ‘It is twelve-fifty’, *Je za pět minut půl druhé* ‘It is one-twenty-five’, *Je za pět minut čtvrt na tři* ‘It is two-ten’, *Je za deset minut tři čtvrtě na čtyři* ‘It is three-thirty-five’.

### 3.3 Intraclausal syntax

Clauses can appear in a variety of guises depending upon negation, mood, voice, and the use of reflexives, reciprocals, and causatives. This section will examine the various syntactic features that operate at the level of the clause.

#### 3.3.1 Word order in declarative clauses

The presence of case markers on nouns, pronouns, and adjectives makes the syntactic function of a noun phrase transparent and largely independent of word order. This means that the word order of Czech is often freer than in English. This does not, however, mean that words in all Czech sentences can be presented in any order. Certain combinations of words have rigidly fixed orders, such as preposition + noun phrase or the adnominal genitive (which almost always immediately follows the item it is modifying). Adjectives show a very strong tendency to immediately precede the nouns they modify, although there are conventionalized exceptions, as in *Bible Svátá* ‘The Holy Bible’, or *Ty kluku nezbedný!* ‘You naughty boy!’. Quantifiers nearly always precede the noun phrase they modify, though exceptions are possible, so one can say both *Tam bylo mnoho dětí* and *Tam bylo dětí mnoho* ‘There were a lot of children there’ (though the latter version is marked, expressing something like ‘I don’t know exactly how many there were, but boy, there were a lot of them!’). Clitics have a fixed order of appearance; this question was discussed in the Phonology chapter. Both SVO and OVS word orders are very frequent, with the choice of order determined largely by the tendency to place the rheme at the end of a sentence, giving the OVS word order a relatively passive meaning. SOV and OSV sentences are considerably rarer, though possible. VSO and VOS word orders are more commonly used for questions (see 3.3.3 below), though they can be used for indicative sentences. Compare the following sentences containing the elements *Anna* (‘Anna’, a nominative subject), *už* (‘already’, an adverb), *napsala* (‘wrote’, a verb), and *tu disertaci* (‘the dissertation’, an accusative object):

SVO: *Anna už napsala tu disertaci* ‘Anna has already written the dissertation’

OVS: *Tu disertaci už napsala Anna* ‘That dissertation was already written by Anna’

SOV: *Anna tu disertaci už napsala* ‘Anna got that dissertation written already’

OSV: *Tu disertaci Anna už napsala* ‘As for that dissertation, Anna has already written it’

VSO: *Napsala už Anna tu disertaci* ‘Anna wrote that dissertation already’

VOS: *Napsala už tu disertaci Anna* ‘Anna is the one that got that dissertation written already’

#### 3.3.2 Negative clauses

As noted in the Morphology chapter, verbs are negated with the prefix *ne-*; but the placement of this prefix varies depending on whether and what auxiliary or modal verbs are present. In the non-past, *ne-* is simply attached to the verb: *Náš syn nestuduje* ‘Our son isn’t studying’. In the past, the *ne-* is appended to the past *l*-form, not the auxiliary: *Včera jsme nebyli doma* ‘We weren’t home yesterday’. The same goes for the conditional, which places *ne-* on the *l*-form: *Náše dcera by se takhle nechovala* ‘Our daughter wouldn’t behave that way’. In the future, however, the *ne-* appears on the auxiliary verb: *Zítro nebudeme pracovat* ‘We aren’t going to work tomorrow’. When modal verbs are present, they receive the negative *ne-* prefix: *Nesmíte tady kouřit* ‘You are not allowed to smoke here’.

Czech requires multiple negation to accompany a negated verb on all negatable items in a clause, including the following:

	Positive		Negative
<i>někdo</i>	‘someone’	<i>nikdo</i>	‘no one’
<i>něco</i>	‘something’	<i>nic</i>	‘nothing’
<i>někdy</i>	‘sometime’	<i>nikdy</i>	‘(not) ever, never’
<i>někde</i>	‘somewhere’	<i>nikde</i>	‘(not) anywhere, nowhere’
<i>nějak</i>	‘somehow’	<i>nijak</i>	‘not at all, in no way’
<i>nějaký</i>	‘some’	<i>žádný</i>	‘(not) any, no, none’

Multiple negation produces utterances like: *Nikdo nikdy nic takového neviděl* ‘No one has ever seen anything of the sort’, *Žádné peníze jsme nikde tam nenašli* ‘We never found any money anywhere around there’.

### 3.3.3 Interrogative clauses

In WH questions the WH word (see table below) typically appears at the beginning of the sentence, although it can also appear mid-sentence or at the end: *Kolik Ludmila platila za ty šaty?* ‘How much did Ludmila pay for that dress?’, *Ludmila kolik platila za ty šaty?* ‘How much was it that Ludmila paid for that dress?’, *Ludmila platila za ty šaty kolik?* ‘Ludmila paid how much for that dress?!’.

<i>co</i>	‘what’	<i>čí</i>	‘whose’
<i>dokdy</i>	‘until when’	<i>jak</i>	‘how’
<i>jaký</i>	‘what kind of’	<i>kam</i>	‘to where’
<i>kde</i>	‘where’	<i>kdo</i>	‘who’
<i>kdy</i>	‘when’	<i>kolik</i>	‘how much’
<i>kolikery</i>	‘how many kinds of’	<i>který</i>	‘which’
<i>kudy</i>	‘which way’	<i>odkdy</i>	‘since when’
<i>odkud</i>	‘from where’	<i>proč</i>	‘why’

Yes-no questions do not have a special syntax in Czech (though they do have a characteristic intonation). Any declarative sentence can be used as a yes-no question, though the most usual word order for yes-no questions places the verb first. All of the word orders illustrated above can serve as yes-no questions, although the VSO and VOS sentences are the most natural candidates: VSO: *Napsala už Anna tu disertaci?* ‘Did Anna write that dissertation already?’, VOS: *Napsala už tu disertaci Anna?* ‘Was Anna the one who got that dissertation written already?’.

### 3.3.4 Commands, requests, and hopes

Czech employs various combinations of morphological and syntactic means to deliver commands and requests, depending upon the discourse situation. The morphological imperative (discussed in Chapter 2) is certainly the most common and unambiguous type of command. The infinitive form can be used for impersonal directives, such as *Stát rovně!* ‘Stand up straight!’. Indicative second-person forms can also be used with imperative force: *Nebudeš tady zlobit!* ‘Don’t go making trouble here!’. Recipes and instruction manuals often employ 1pl indicative forms in the place of imperatives as well: *Koláč upečeme do zlatova* ‘Bake the pie until golden brown’. The imposition of one person’s will on another can be expressed in a subordinate clause using the *a*-prefixed conditional *aby* ‘in order that’ forms: 1sg *abych*, 2sg *abys*, 3sg *aby*,

1pl *abychom*, 2pl *abyste*, 3pl *aby*; *Prosím vás, abyste chvilku počkal* ‘I ask you to/Please wait for a little while’. Polite requests often avoid the imperative and use the conditional, often in conjunction with the negative, in order to soften the demand: *Ukázal byste mi to na mapě?* ‘Could you show it to me on the map?’, *Nemohli byste nám pomoci?* ‘Could you help us?’ Wishes and hopes also can be expressed by *kéž* ‘if only’ followed by either the indicative or conditional, or by *jen aby* ‘if only’, or by a bare infinitive: *Kéž přijde včas* ‘I hope he comes on time’, *Kéž bychom mohli žít bez konfliktů* ‘If only we could live without conflicts’, *Jen aby mohl nastartovat ten motor* ‘I only hope he can start that motor’, *Umět tančit jako ona!* ‘If only I could dance like she does!’

### 3.3.5 Passives, reflexives, reciprocals, intensives, and causatives

There are two syntactic constructions that focus attention on the patient rather than the agent of an action, producing passive (or middle) voice expressions. The first is achieved by using the past passive participle (with appropriate tense forms of the verb *být* ‘be’), with the agent optionally expressed in the instrumental case. The second construction uses the reflexive particle *se*, but does not permit the agent to be expressed. Thus a transitive sentence such as *Známý režisér natočil ten film v naší vesnici* ‘A famous director made that film in our village’ has two corresponding constructions, a true passive with an optional agent *Ten film byl natočen v naší vesnici (známým režisérem)* ‘That film was made in our village (by a famous director)’, and an obligatorily agentless construction which behaves more like a middle voice *Ten film se natočil v naší vesnici* ‘That film was made in our village’. The *se* construction can also be used with intransitive verbs and default neuter singular agreement; compare this active sentence *Tancovali jsme tam celou noc* ‘We danced there all night’ with its corresponding *se*-construction *Tancovalo se tam celou noc* ‘Dancing went on there all night’. The *se*-construction, when used with the dative case, is particularly well-suited to implying that events take place due to good or bad fortune or due to feelings that no one can be blamed for: *Matematika se Petrovi studovala snadno* ‘Petr found learning math easy’, *Dítěti se nechtělo spát* ‘The child didn’t feel sleepy’, *Sáře se rozlilo mléko* ‘Sara spilled the milk by accident’. A similar passive sense can be conveyed by using the 3pl indicative without a subject, as in *Zablokovali všechny dálnice* ‘They blocked all the freeways/All the freeways were blocked’.

As a rule, the referent of all reflexive forms (i.e., all reflexive pronouns and the possessive *svůj* ‘one’s own’) is the subject of the clause: *Profesor hájil svou teorii před výtkami* ‘The professor defended **his** theory against objections’ (here only *svou* ‘one’s own’ is admissible, *jeho* ‘his’ would refer to someone else’s theory), *Profesor se hájil před výtkami* ‘The professor defended **himself** against objections’, *Koupil jsem si nový počítač* ‘I bought **myself** a new computer’, *Nemohla jsem sebou hnout* ‘I couldn’t get **myself** moving’. There are some exceptions to this rule, however, as seen in *Dej ty talíře na své místo* ‘Put these dishes in **their** place’, and *Dám ti deštník s sebou* ‘I’ll give you an umbrella [to take] with **you**’.

In addition to its non-active and reflexive uses mentioned above, *se* can be used reciprocally, a capacity it shares with the dative *si*: *Proč se ti matematici pořád kritizují?* ‘Why are those mathematicians constantly criticizing **each other**?’, *Začali jsme si dopisovat na internetu* ‘We started to write letters to **each other** on the internet’. There are also verbs that simply require either *se* or *si* without implying any passive, reflexive, or reciprocal meaning. A characterization of verbs requiring *si* appears above in the description of the dative case. The list of verbs requiring *se* is much longer and more difficult to characterize; virtually all *se* verbs (with the possible exceptions of *učit se* ‘study’ and *dozvědět se* ‘find out’) are intransitive.

Both *se* and *si*, as well as other reflexive pronoun forms cooperate with *dávat/dát* ‘give, have’ and *nechávat/nechat* ‘let’ to create causative constructions in which the subject has or allows something to be done for, to, about, or with him/herself: *Dala/Nechala si ušít těhotenské*

*šaty* ‘She had maternity clothes sewn for her’, *Dal/Nechal se zlákat nadějí na zisk, a všechno prohrál v kasinu* ‘He let himself be enticed by hopes of profit, and lost everything at the casino’, *Nikdy nedával na sobě nic znát* ‘He never gave himself away’.

### 3.4 Interclausal syntax

The topics of syntactic coordination and subordination could easily fill a large book by themselves. The following discussion will focus only on the most significant conjunctions, relativizers, and other words used to achieve these syntactic purposes. Because Czech uses conjunctions to coordinate both clauses and their constituent parts, section 3.4.1 discusses both intra- and interclausal coordination as a single phenomenon.

#### 3.4.1 Coordination

The simple joining of constituents (be they clauses or parts thereof) is most frequently achieved by the conjunction *a* ‘and’: *Tam jsme viděli Janu a Terezu* ‘We saw Jana and Tereza there’, *Celý večer jsme poslouchali hudbu a povídali si* ‘We listened to music and talked all evening’. Such joining can be achieved by mere juxtaposition, without using any conjunction at all: *Na promování přišli studenti, rodiče, známí, profesori* ‘Students, parents, friends, and professors came to the graduation’. The conjunction *i* ‘and (too); even’ is emphatic or conjoins things which obviously go together: *Prominul všem, přátelům i nepřátelům* ‘He forgave everyone, friends and enemies too’, *I v Praze najdeš ošklivé čtvrtě* ‘Even in Prague you can find bad sections’. The conjunction *ba* ‘for that matter’ is likewise emphatic: *Pacient je bledý, ba sinálý* ‘The patient is pale, and even bluish’. In the presence of negation coordination is expressed by *ani* ‘nor; not - even’: *Nepozdravila mě, ani se na mne nepodívala* ‘She did not greet me, nor did she even look at me’. These three conjunctions are often combined with each other and with other words, particularly *dokonce* ‘even’ to yield combinations such as *a i* ‘and also’, *ba i* ‘and even (too)’, *a dokonce* ‘and even’, *dokonce i* ‘and even’, *ba dokonce* ‘and even’, *a ani* ‘nor even’: *Neřekl svoje jméno (a) ani nenechal vzkaz* ‘He didn’t give his name, nor did he even leave a message’. Pairs of conjunctions can also be yoked discontinuously to produce constructions containing *i - i* ‘both - and’, *jak - tak i* ‘both - and’, *ani - ani* ‘neither - nor’: *I děti i dospělí rádi jezdí na kolech* ‘Both children and adults like to ride bicycles’, *Slíbil jí jak práci, tak i slušné ubytování* ‘He promised her both a job and decent housing’, *Nemohla jsem zvednout ani ruku ani nohu* ‘I couldn’t lift an arm or a leg’, *Ani nepracoval, ani neplatil činži* ‘He neither worked nor paid rent’.

Coordination of alternatives is expressed by conjunctions such as *ale* ‘but’, *(a)však* ‘however’, *(a)nebo* ‘or’, the bookish *nýbrž* ‘but’, and *či* ‘or’: *Chtěl jsem tě potkat na letišti, ale nevěděl jsem, kdy máš přiletět* ‘I wanted to meet you at the airport, but I didn’t know when you were supposed to arrive’, *Nebydlí v Německu, nýbrž ve Švédsku* ‘He doesn’t live in Germany, but in Sweden’, *Všichni očekávali nějaké překvapení na tiskové konferenci, prezident však nic nového nesdělil* ‘Everyone was expecting a surprise at the press conference, however the president didn’t report anything new’, *Chceš dneska jít plavat nebo/či si koupit zmrzlinu?* ‘Do you want to go swimming today or buy ice cream?’. Some of these conjunctions can appear in yoked constructions, the most common being *nejen - ale/nýbrž* ‘not only - but’ and *bud’ - (a)nebo* ‘either - or’: *Je nejen náš nejlepší odborník, ale/nýbrž taky sympatický člověk* ‘He’s not only our best expert, but also a nice person’, *Bud’ přijdeš včas, nebo odjedu bez tebe* ‘Either you come on time or I am leaving without you’.

#### 3.4.2 Subordination

The single most important word used to introduce a subordinate clause is *že* ‘that’; note that unlike English, Czech always uses the same tense in the subordinate clause as it would in the



independent sentence: *Meteorologové nepředpověděli, že ta bouřka způsobí záplavy* ‘The meteorologists did not predict that the storm would cause floods’, *Nikdo ani nepoznal, že jsem Čech* ‘Nobody even realized that I was Czech’. Tense is also preserved when *že* is used in reported speech: *Řekl, že dál tady nebude pracovat* ‘He said that he wouldn’t work here any more’. Tag questions are formed by appending *že ano/jo* or *že ne* to a statement: *Ty taky pojeděš s námi na pláž, že jo?* ‘You are also coming to the beach with us, right?’, *Snad dnes nebude pršet, že ne?* ‘Surely it won’t rain today, will it?’.

Czech has a whole array of conjunctions that express various temporal and other relationships between the main clause and a subordinate clause. Some of the most common ones are collected and illustrated in the table below:

Conjunction	Relationship	
<i>když</i> ‘when’	subordinate past/present event simultaneous with main event	<i>Nekoupili jsme žádné sklo, když jsme byli v Česku.</i> ‘We didn’t buy any glass when we were in Bohemia.’ <i>Vždycky se potím, když pracuji na zahradě.</i> ‘I always sweat when I work in the garden.’
<i>až</i> ‘when’	subordinate future event simultaneous with or precedes main event	<i>Zavolej tetě, až budeš v Praze/až dostaneš práci.</i> ‘Call your aunt when you are in Prague/when you get a job.’
<i>zatímco</i> ‘while, whereas’, <i>dokud</i> ‘for as long as’	subordinate event simultaneous with main event	<i>Zatímco v jednom pokoji uklízím, dcera dělá nepořádek v druhém.</i> ‘While I’m cleaning up in one room, my daughter is making a mess in the other one.’ <i>Dokud bude na Kubě diktatura, lidé se budou snažit se dostat do Ameriky.</i> ‘As long as there is a dictatorship in Cuba, people will try to get to America.’
<i>kdykoli</i> ‘whenever’, <i>pokaždé, když</i> ‘each time’	repeated simultaneous events	<i>Kdykoli/Pokaždé, když začne plakat, matka mu cpe do pusy bonbóny.</i> ‘Whenever/Each time he starts to cry, his mother stuffs candies in his mouth.’
<i>jakmile</i> ‘as soon as’	punctual proximal events	<i>Jakmile rozsvítil, poznal, že něco není v pořádku.</i> ‘As soon as he turned on the lights he realized that something was wrong.’
<i>než</i> ‘before’, <i>dokud</i> <i>ne</i> ‘until’	main event precedes subordinate event	<i>Doufám, že nebudeme muset dlouho čekat, než přijede sanitka/dokud nepřijede sanitka.</i> ‘I hope that we won’t have to wait long before/until the ambulance comes.’

<i>protože</i> 'because', <i>poněvadž,</i> <i>jelikož</i> 'since', <i>nebot</i> 'for'	main event is result of subordinate event	<i>Všichni milují šéfa, protože on všem pomáhá.</i> 'Everybody loves the boss because he helps everyone.' <i>Poněvadž/Jelikož naši studenti neumějí česky, nemohou číst Čapka v originálu.</i> 'Since our students don't know Czech, they cannot read Čapek in the original.' <i>Nikdy neodpovídala kritikům, nebot' nechtěla dát najevo, že dělá chyby.</i> 'She never answered her critics, for she didn't want to reveal that she was making mistakes.'
<i>takže</i> 'so'	subordinate event is result of main event	<i>Potřebovali tlumočníka, takže mi zavolali na univerzitu.</i> 'They needed an interpreter, so they called me at the university.'
<i>ačkoli,</i> <i>třebaže, i když</i> 'even though'	main event is adverse to subordinate event	<i>Musíme všem činit dobro, ačkoli/třebaže/i když nám nedělají totéž.</i> 'We must do good to everyone, even though they don't do the same for us.'
<i>jestli(že), když,</i> <i>-li</i> 'if'	subordinate event is a real condition for main event	<i>Jestli(že)/Když mi nebudeš pomáhat, nevím, jak to dopadne.</i> 'If you don't help me, I don't know how it will turn out.' <i>Naučíte-li se dobře česky, koupím vám letenku do Prahy.</i> 'If you learn Czech well, I will buy you a plane ticket to Prague.'

When the subordinate clause presents a hypothetical or counterfactual condition or a purpose, the conjunction (*kdy-* for conditions and *a-* for purposes) is prefixed to the conditional particle (1sg *bych*, 2sg *bys*, 3sg *by*, 1pl *bychom*, 2pl *byste*, 3pl *by*) and the subordinate clause is conditional.

Hypothetical condition:

*Kdybych věděla, kdy přiletí, jela bych mu naproti.*

'If I knew when he was arriving, I would meet him at the airport.'

Counterfactual condition:

*Kdybych byla věděla, kdy přiletí, byla bych mu jela naproti.*

'If I had known when he was arriving, I would have met him at the airport.'

Purpose:

*Řekl mi, kdy přiletí, abych mu jela naproti.*

'He told me when he was arriving so that I could meet him at the airport.'

### 3.4.3 Relative clauses

The declension of the relative pronoun *jenž* is presented in Chapter 2, but in addition to *jenž*, Czech instead uses  *který*  'which' as an all-purpose relativizer. Like *jenž*,  *který*  agrees with its referent in gender and number, while its case is determined by the clause it is in. Note that  *který*  and *jenž* can both occur as the object of a preposition:

*Gratulujeme studentům, kteří/již dopsali své disertace.*

'We congratulate the students who have finished their dissertations.'

*Policisté hledají nůž, kterým/jímž zločinec zavraždil vdovu.*

‘The police are looking for the knife with which the criminal killed the widow.’

*Kdy se seznámíme s přítelem, o kterém/němž stále mluvíš?*

‘When will we meet the friend that you are always talking about?’

When the relative clause refers to a possessor, the possessive forms of *jenž* (*jehož* (‘his’), *jejíž* (‘her’), *jejichž* (‘their’), all of which mean ‘whose’ are used: *Proč nevolá ten kluk, jehož bratra jsme včera potkali?* ‘Why doesn’t that boy whose brother we met yesterday call?’

### 3.5 Syntax of Colloquial Czech

Colloquial Czech provides some syntactic alternatives to certain constructions in the literary language. Only the most salient CCz characteristics will be mentioned here. The interested reader is referred to Townsend 1990 for further details.

Whereas nominative subject pronouns are usually dropped (unless emphatic) in LCz, CCz shows a tendency to retain them:

LCz	CCz	
<i>Nechtěla jsem to dělat</i>	<i>Já jsem to nechtěla dělat</i>	‘I didn’t want to do it’
<i>Budete doma?</i>	<i>Vy budete doma?</i>	‘Will you be at home?’

CCz shows a strong tendency to eliminate the use of the partitive genitive (aside from *chleba* ‘bread’ and *sejra* ‘cheese’, partitive genitive forms that are widespread in subject and direct object positions in CCz) and genitive of negation, and a tendency to avoid government of genitive and dative by verbs in favor of the accusative, thus to some extent simplifying the use of case. In the examples below LCz shows variation between genitive or dative and accusative cases, whereas CCz uses only the accusative case for all of these constructions:

LCz	CCz	
genitive of negation <i>Nemáme peněz/peníze</i>	no genitive of negation <i>Nemáme peníze</i>	‘We don’t have any money’
partitive genitive <i>Přidala bych si kávy/kávu</i>	no partitive genitive <i>Přidala bych si kávu</i>	‘I’d like more coffee’
governed genitive <i>Používáte silného léku/silný lék</i>	accusative object <i>Používáte silný lék</i>	‘You use strong medicine’
governed dative <i>Učím se češtině/češtinu</i>	accusative object <i>Učím se češtinu</i>	‘I’m studying Czech’

The use of the predicate instrumental to express a category that an item belongs to usually gives way to the predicate nominative in CCz, and the use of the instrumental to express instruments is frequently accompanied in CCz by the preposition *s* ‘with’, which would be absent in LCz. Thus Čapek’s famous essay *Proč nejsem komunistou* ‘Why I am not a communist’ would most likely be rendered in CCz as *Proč nejsem komunista*, and CCz contains phrases like *jet s autem* ‘go by car’, *krájet s nožem* ‘slice with a knife’, which would appear without *s* in LCz.

Though CCz can use the relativizer *který* in the same way as LCz, CCz often uses the interrogative *co* ‘what’ in this function instead, accompanied by personal pronouns when representing an oblique case:

LCz	CCz	
<i>studenti, kteří tady pracují</i>	<i>studenti, co tady pracujou</i>	‘the students who work here’
<i>politik, kterému jsme nevěřili</i>	<i>politik, co jsme mu nevěřili</i>	‘the politician we didn’t believe’
<i>provdavačka, s kterou jste mluvil</i>	<i>prodavačka, co jste s ní mluvil</i>	‘the saleslady you were talking to’

CCz has some other syntactic features unique to its register. Among them are the use of *ten* as a definite article or pronoun, and the use of *to* as a “dummy subject” rather similar to English *it*. These uses can be contrasted to their absence in corresponding LCz phrases:

LCz	CCz	
<i>-Budeš mluvit s učitelkou?</i>	<i>-Budeš mluvit s tou učitelkou?</i>	-Will you talk with the teacher?
<i>-Nechtěl bych. S ní nechci mít nic společného.</i>	<i>-To bych nechtěl. S tou nechci mít nic společnýho.</i>	-I’d rather not. I don’t want to have anything to do with her.

The use of a neuter singular past passive participle with *mít* to mean ‘have something done’ is largely restricted to CCz: *At’ sem nechodí! Ještě nemám tady uklizeno* ‘Don’t let them in here! I don’t have this place cleaned up yet’. The closest LCz equivalents would be *Ještě tady není uklizeno* or *Ještě jsem tady neuklidila*.



## 4 Texts

The following two texts exemplify literary and Colloquial Czech. The first text, which illustrates LCz, is excerpted from the opening pages of Michal Viewegh's 1992 novel *Báječná léta pod psa* "Those Marvellous Crummy Years".

<i>Kvido</i> Kvido-NOM According to Zita's estimate, Kvido was supposed to	<i>se</i> REFL-A	<i>měl</i> had-pastmsg	<i>podle</i> according to	<i>Zitiných</i> Zita's-Gpl
<i>předpokladů</i> assumptions-Gpl be born in the first week	<i>narodit</i> give-birth-infin	<i>v</i> in	<i>prvním</i> first-Lsgm	<i>srpnovém</i> August-Lsgm
<i>týdnu</i> week-Lsg of August in the year nineteen hundred sixty-two	<i>roku</i> year-Gsg	<i>devatenáct</i> nineteen-N	<i>set</i> hundreds-Gpl	<i>šedesát</i> sixty-N
<i>dva</i> two-N in the maternity hospital in Podolí.	<i>v</i> in	<i>porodnici</i> maternity-hospital- Lsg	<i>v</i> in	<i>Podolí.</i> Podolí-Lsg.
<i>Jeho</i> His At that time his mother had already	<i>matka</i> mother-Nsg	<i>měla</i> had-pastfsg	<i>v</i> in	<i>té</i> that-Lsgf
<i>době</i> time-Lsg completed twenty seasons in the theater,	<i>za</i> behind	<i>sebou</i> self-I	<i>dvanáct</i> twenty-A	<i>divadelních</i> theater-adj-Gpl
<i>sezón,</i> seasons-Gpl, although she considered the vast majority of her	<i>avšak</i> however	<i>velkou</i> large-Asgf	<i>většinu</i> majority-Asg	<i>svých</i> own-Gpl
<i>převážně</i> primarily primarily children's roles in plays by Jirásek,	<i>dětských</i> children's-Gpl	<i>rolí</i> roles-Gpl	<i>v</i> in	<i>Jiráskových,</i> Jirásek's-Lpl
<i>Tylových,</i> Tyl's-Lpl Tyl, Kohout, and Mařenek	<i>Kohoutových</i> Kohout's-Lpl	<i>a</i> and	<i>Mařenkových</i> Mařenek's-Lpl	<i>hrách</i> plays-Lpl
<i>považovala</i> considered to be the mildly compromising sins	<i>za</i> for	<i>mírně</i> mildly	<i>kompromitující</i> compromising-Apl	<i>hříchy</i> sins-Apl

<i>mládí.</i> youth-Gsg. of youth. After all, she was studying in the fourth year	<i>Studovala</i> Studied-pastfsg	<i>ostatně</i> after-all	<i>čtvrtý</i> fourth-Asgm	<i>ročník</i> year-Asg
<i>práv</i> law-Gpl of law school and she now thought of her participation	<i>a</i> and	<i>svou</i> own-Asgf	<i>účast</i> participation-Asg	<i>v</i> in
<i>komparsu</i> bit-parts-Lsg as an extra for the Theater of the Czechoslovak army in	<i>Divadla</i> Theater-Gsg	<i>československé</i> Czechoslovak-Gsgf	<i>armády</i> army-Gsg	<i>na</i> at
<i>Vinohradech</i> Vinohrady-Lpl Vinohrady as merely a	<i>brala</i> took-pastfsg	<i>už</i> already	<i>jen</i> only	<i>jako</i> as
<i>nezávaznou</i> noncommittal-Asgf noncommittal game (which of course	<i>hru</i> game-Asg	<i>(což</i> (which-Nsg	<i>jí</i> her-Dsg	<i>ovšem</i> of-course
<i>nebránilo,</i> not-prevented-pastnsg, did not prevent her from presenting the more or less random fact	<i>aby</i> in-order-to-3sgAUX	<i>víceméně</i> more-or-less	<i>náhodnou</i> random-Asgf	<i>okolnost,</i> circumstance-Asg,
<i>že</i> that that the expected date of birth coincided with	<i>termín</i> time-Nsg	<i>porodu</i> birth-Gsg	<i>spadá</i> falls-nonpast3sg	<i>do</i> to
<i>divadelních</i> theater-adj-Gpl the theater's vacation time to her more successful	<i>prázdnin,</i> holidays-Gpl,	<i>nepresentovala</i> not-presented-pastfsg	<i>před</i> before	<i>úspěšnějšími</i> more-successful-Ipl
<i>kolegyněmi</i> colleagues-Ipl colleagues absolutely as a matter of proper	<i>coby</i> as	<i>věc</i> thing-Asg	<i>naprosto</i> absolutely	<i>samozřejmě</i> obvious-Gsgf
<i>profesionální</i> professional-Gsg professional discipline). However paradoxical it may sound,	<i>kázně).</i> self-control-Gsg).	<i>Jakkoli</i> However	<i>to</i> that-Nsg	<i>zní</i> sounds-nonpast3sg
<i>paradoxně,</i> paradoxically, beneath the veneer of amateur enthusiasm	<i>pod</i> under	<i>slupkou</i> peel-Isg	<i>ochotnického</i> amateurish-Gsgn	<i>zanícení</i> enthusiasm-Gsg

<i>byla</i> was-pastfsg Kvido's mother -- the one-time star	<i>Kvidova</i> Kvido's-Nsgf	<i>matka</i> mother-Nsg	-- <i>někdejší</i> -- one-time-Nsgf	<i>hvězda</i> star-Nsg
<i>školních</i> school-adj-Gpl of school plays -- was in reality	<i>představení --</i> shows-Gpl --	<i>ve</i> in	<i>skutečnosti</i> reality-Lsg	<i>velmi</i> very
<i>stydlivá</i> shy-Nsgf shy and noone else besides Zita	<i>a</i> and	<i>kromě</i> aside-from	<i>Zity</i> Zita-Gsg	<i>ji</i> her-Asg
<i>také</i> also was allowed to examine her.	<i>nesměl</i> not-was-allowed- pastmsg	<i>nikdo</i> noone-Nsg	<i>jiný</i> else-Nsg	<i>prohlédnout.</i> examine-infin.
<i>Paní</i> Mrs.-Nsg Zita, the head physician of the Podolí maternity hospital	<i>Zita,</i> Zita-Nsg,	<i>primářka</i> head-physician- Nsg	<i>podolské</i> Podolí-adj-Gsgf	<i>porodnice</i> maternity hospital- Gsg
<i>a</i> and and for many years a friend of grandmother Líba,	<i>dlouholetá</i> many-years-adj- Nsgf	<i>přítelkyně</i> friend-Nsg	<i>babičky</i> grandmother-Gsg	<i>Líby,</i> Líba-Gsg,
<i>kteřá</i> who-Nsgf who had known Kvido's mother since	<i>znala</i> knew-pastfsg	<i>Kvidovu</i> Kvido's-Asgf	<i>matku</i> mother-Asg	<i>od</i> from
<i>dětství,</i> childhood-Gsg, childhood, patiently tried to	<i>se</i> REFL-A	<i>trpělivě</i> patiently	<i>snažila</i> tried-pastfsg	<i>jejímu</i> her-Dsgm
<i>rozmaru</i> whim-Dsg cater to her whim and promised her	<i>vyhovět</i> cater-to-infin	<i>a</i> and	<i>přislíbila</i> promised-pastfsg	<i>jí,</i> her-D,
<i>že</i> that that she would reorganize the doctors' schedules	<i>přeorganizuje</i> reorganize- nonpast3sg	<i>služby</i> services-Apl	<i>lékařů</i> doctors-Gpl	<i>tak,</i> thus,
<i>aby</i> in-order-to- 3sgAUX so that on that critical day	<i>v</i> in	<i>onen</i> that-Asgm	<i>kritický</i> critical-Asgm	<i>den</i> day-Asg



<i>neasistoval</i> not-assisted- pastmsg there would not be even one man assisting in the	<i>na</i> at	<i>sále</i> ward-Lsg	<i>ani</i> not-even	<i>jeden</i> one-Nsgm
<i>muž.</i> man-Nsg. ward. “With Zita in Podolí	“ <i>U</i> By	<i>Zity</i> Zita-Gsg	<i>v</i> in	<i>Podolí</i> Podolí-Lsg
<i>žádný</i> no-Nsgm no birth ever hurts”, rhymed	<i>porod</i> birth-Nsg	<i>nebolí,”</i> not-hurts- nonpast3sg	<i>veršovala</i> rhymed-pastfsg	<i>u</i> by
<i>oběda</i> lunch-Gsg grandmother Líba at lunch, and even	<i>babička</i> grandmother-Nsg	<i>Líba,</i> Líba-Nsg,	<i>a</i> and	<i>dokonce</i> even
<i>i</i> also Kvido’s father’s father, grandfather	<i>otec</i> father-Nsf	<i>Kvidova</i> Kvido’s-Gsgm	<i>otce,</i> father-Gsg,	<i>dědeček</i> grandfather-Nsg
<i>Josef,</i> Josef-Nsg, Josef, despite his apriori skepticism concerning	<i>ač</i> although	<i>apriorně</i> apriori	<i>skeptický</i> skeptical-Nsgm	<i>vůči</i> concerning
<i>všemu</i> all-Dsgn everything communist, naturally making no exception for health care,	<i>komunistickému,</i> communist-Dsgn	<i>zdravotnictví</i> health-care-Asg	<i>přirozeně</i> naturally	<i>nevyjímaje,</i> not-excepting,
<i>byl</i> was-pastmsg was willing to admit that the likelihood	<i>ochoten</i> willing-Nsgm	<i>připustit,</i> allow-infin,	<i>že</i> that	<i>pravděpodobnost</i> likelihood-Nsg
<i>rozdrcení</i> crushing-Gsg of Kvido’s little head being crushed by the hospital tongs	<i>Kvidovy</i> Kvido’s-Gsgf	<i>hlavičky</i> little-head -Gsg	<i>porodnickými</i> maternity-hospital- adj-Ipl	<i>kleštěmi</i> tongs-Ipl
<i>je</i> is-nonpast3sg this time was indeed	<i>tentokrát</i> this-time	<i>přece</i> after-all	<i>jen</i> only	<i>o</i> by
<i>něco</i> something-A somewhat lower than it would be elsewhere. The only thing	<i>nižší</i> lower-Asgn	<i>než</i> than	<i>jindy.</i> elsewhere.	<i>Jediné,</i> Only-Nsgn,

<i>s</i> with	<i>čím</i> what-I	<i>nikdo</i> no one-N	<i>nepočítal,</i> not-counted- pastmsg,	<i>byl</i> was-pastmsg
that no one had taken into account was				
<i>urousaný</i> shaggy-Nsgm	<i>černý</i> black-Nsgm	<i>vlčák,</i> German-shepherd- Nsg,	<i>který</i> which-Nsgm	<i>se</i> REFL-A
a shaggy black German shepherd which				
<i>už</i> already	<i>dvacátého</i> twentieth-Gsgn	<i>sedmého</i> seventh-Gsgn	<i>června</i> June-G	<i>večer</i> evening
suddenly appeared on the evening of the twenty-seventh of June				
<i>objevil</i> appeared-pastmsg	<i>v</i> in	<i>narudlém</i> crimson-Lsgn	<i>slunečním</i> sun-adj-Lsgn	<i>světle</i> light-Lsg
in the crimson-colored sunlight				
<i>na</i> on	<i>vltavském</i> Vltava-adj-Lsgn	<i>nábřeží</i> embankment-Lsg	<i>právě</i> precisely	<i>ve</i> in
on the embankment of the Vltava precisely at				
<i>chvíli,</i> moment-Lsg,	<i>kdy</i> when	<i>Kvidova</i> Kvido's-Nsgf	<i>matka</i> mother-Nsg	<i>ztěžka</i> cumbersomely
the moment when Kvido's mother was cumbersomely				
<i>vylézala</i> climbed-out- pastfsg	<i>z</i> out-of	<i>taxíku,</i> taxi-Gsg	<i>a</i> and	<i>který</i> which-Nsgm
climbing out of a taxi, and which				
<i>ji</i> her-A	<i>-- po</i> -- after	<i>krátkém,</i> short-Lsgm,	<i>neslyšném</i> not-heard-Lsgm	<i>rozběhu --</i> dash-Lsg --
-- after quickly dashing up unheard --				
<i>přirazil</i> knocked-against- pastmsg	<i>k</i> to	<i>teplé</i> warm-Dsgf	<i>omítce</i> plaster-Dsg	<i>domu</i> house-Gsg
knocked her against the warm plaster of a house				
<i>na</i> on	<i>rohu</i> corner-Lsg	<i>Anenského</i> Anenské-Gsgn	<i>náměstí.</i> square-Gsg.	
on the corner of Anenské square.				

The second text, representing Colloquial Czech, is excerpted from the transcription of a conversation in *Mluvená čeština v autentických textech* (Müllerová et al. 1992). A correlate to punctuation that exists in speech are pauses, represented below by periods. Phonological and morphological features of LCz that differ from CCz are noted below by inserting LCz variants in square brackets.

<i>tam</i> there standing there is just like.	<i>prostě</i> simply a group	<i>stojí</i> stands-nonpast3sg like	<i>jako.</i> like	<i>skupina</i> group-Nsg
<i>lidí</i> people-Gpl of people who just stare quietly.	<i>který [kteří]</i> who-Npl	<i>jenom</i> only	<i>tiše</i> quietly	<i>zíraj [zírají].</i> stare-nonpast3pl.
<i>no</i> well well and then she came to him just like that	<i>a</i> and	<i>pak</i> then	<i>takhle</i> this-way	<i>přišla</i> came-pastfsg
<i>brácho [bratře]</i> brother-Vsg brother let's dance. she didn't ask	<i>dem [jdeme]</i> go-nonpast1pl	<i>tancovat.</i> dance-infin	<i>neptala</i> not-asked-pastfsg	<i>se</i> REFL-A
<i>ho</i> him-G him I think that	<i>to</i> that-Nsgn	<i>si</i> REFL-D	<i>myslim [myslím]</i> think-nonpast1sg	<i>že</i> that
<i>ani</i> not-even even I wouldn't dare. but then	<i>já</i> I-N	<i>nedovolim [-ím].</i> not-allow- nonpast1sg.	<i>ale</i> but	<i>tak</i> so
<i>já</i> I-N I also come on kind of. strong	<i>sem [jsem]</i> am	<i>taky</i> also	<i>jako.</i> like	<i>ráznější</i> more-forceful-Nsgf
<i>no</i> but but well. she. exceeded expectation.	<i>ale.</i> well	<i>ona.</i> she	<i>předčila</i> exceeded-pastfsg	<i>očekávání.</i> expectation-Asg.
<i>vona [ona]</i> she-N she is like that. and she	<i>je</i> is	<i>taková.</i> such-Nsgf.	<i>a</i> and	<i>vona [ona]</i> she-N
<i>jako.</i> like. like. obviously when she was	<i>jak</i> when	<i>byla</i> was-pastfsg	<i>zřejmě</i> obviously	<i>v</i> in

<i>tý [té]</i> that-Lsgf still in that situation. like	<i>situaci</i> situation	<i>eště [ještě].</i> still.	<i>jako</i> like	<i>že</i> that
<i>to</i> that-Nsgn for her it was such	<i>byla</i> was-pastfsg	<i>pro</i> for	<i>ní [ni]</i> her-A	<i>taková</i> such
<i>nátlaková</i> stressful-Nsgf a stressful situation that she. like.	<i>situace.</i> situation-Nsg	<i>že</i> that	<i>vona [ona].</i> she-N.	<i>jako.</i> like.
<i>to</i> that-Asg overdid it well. so she	<i>přeháněla</i> overdid-pastfsg	<i>no.</i> well	<i>takže</i> so	<i>vona [ona]</i> she-N
<i>jako</i> like like always appeared to be coming on strong in a silky dress.	<i>v</i> in	<i>hebounejkých</i> [-kých] silky-Lpl	<i>šatičkách.</i> dress-Lpl.	<i>dycky [vždycky]</i> always
<i>rázně</i> forcefully well you see like this	<i>přišla.</i> came-pastfsg	<i>no</i> well	<i>totiž</i> you-see	<i>takhle</i> like-this
<i>vono [ono]</i> it-Nsg it's maybe those	<i>třeba</i> perhaps	<i>tam</i> there	<i>se</i> REFL-A	<i>ty</i> those-Nplf
<i>holky</i> girls-Npl girls there still dress like in	<i>voblíkaj [oblékají]</i> dress-nonpast3pl	<i>eště [ještě]</i> still	<i>jako</i> like	<i>do</i> to
<i>růžovejch [-ých]</i> pink-Gpl pink dresses and she was wearing	<i>šatiček</i> dresses-Gpl	<i>a</i> and	<i>vona [ona]</i> she-N	<i>měla</i> had-pastfsg
<i>šaty</i> dress-Apl a dress like she had borrowed it from an older	<i>jako</i> like	<i>pučený [půjčené]</i> borrowed-Aplf	<i>vod [od]</i> from	<i>starší</i> older-Gsgf
<i>dámy.</i> woman-Gsg. woman. Admittedly very modern and like	<i>sice</i> admittedly	<i>děsně</i> very	<i>moderní</i> modern-Aplf	<i>jako</i> like
<i>lehounký [-é]</i> light-Npl light yes and like. it's silky	<i>jo [ano]</i> yes	<i>jako.</i> like.	<i>hebounký [-é]</i> silky-Npl	<i>sou [jsou]</i> are-nonpast3pl

<i>no</i> well well she simply didn't look as sweet	<i>prostě</i> simply	<i>nevypadala</i> not-looked-pastfsg	<i>tak</i> so	<i>sladce</i> sweetly
<i>jak</i> like as some of the other young ladies there	<i>ty</i> those-Nplf	<i>některý [-é]</i> certain-Nplf	<i>slečny</i> misses	<i>tam</i> there
<i>no.</i> well. well. who had to be all	<i>kteřý [-é]</i> who-Nplf	<i>musely</i> had-to-pastfpl	<i>bejt [být]</i> be-infin	<i>celý [-é]</i> all-Nplf
<i>ve</i> in in gold. or even all	<i>zlatě.</i> gold-Lsg.	<i>nebo</i> or	<i>zase</i> again	<i>celý [-é]</i> all-Nplf
<i>v</i> in in pink. that's just	<i>růžovým [-ém].</i> pink-Lsgn	<i>to</i> that-Nsg	<i>je</i> is-nonpast3sg	<i>prostě</i> simply
<i>vidět.</i> see-infin. clear. it's like maybe those girls	<i>jak</i> like	<i>ty</i> those-Nplf	<i>holky</i> girls-Npl	<i>třeba</i> maybe
<i>nechoděj [-ějí]</i> not-go-nonpast3pl don't like go to dances.	<i>jako</i> like	<i>takhle</i> this-way	<i>na</i> to	<i>plesy.</i> dances-Apl.
<i>jo</i> yes yes like. they just don't have any	<i>jako.</i> like.	<i>nemaj [nemají]</i> not-have- nonpast3pl	<i>prostě</i> simply	<i>nějaký [nějaké].</i> some-Aplf.
<i>běžný [-é]</i> normal-Aplf normal dresses and it seems to them	<i>šaty</i> dresses-Apl	<i>a</i> and	<i>přide [přijde]</i> seems-nonpast3sg	<i>jim</i> them-D
<i>že</i> that that the senior prom. is something	<i>ten</i> that-Nsgm	<i>maturit'ák</i> [maturitní ples]. senior prom-Nsg.	<i>je</i> is-nonpast3sg	<i>něco</i> something-Nsg
<i>děsně</i> terribly terribly fancy. that some special dress	<i>nóbl [vznešené].</i> fancy.	<i>že</i> that	<i>se</i> REFL-A	<i>musej [musejí]</i> must-nonpast3pl
<i>ušít</i> sew-infin has to be sewn and	<i>nějaký [nějaké]</i> some-Nplf	<i>zvláštní</i> special-Nplf	<i>šaty</i> dress-Npl	<i>a</i> and

<i>pak</i> then then it becomes simply.	<i>je</i> is-nonpast3sg	<i>z</i> from	<i>toho</i> that-Gsgn	<i>prostě.</i> simply.
<i>že</i> that that it's maybe like.	<i>to</i> that-Nsg	<i>třeba</i> perhaps	<i>jako</i> like	<i>je.</i> is-nonpast3sg
<i>moc</i> very too much gold or. yes.	<i>zlatý [-é]</i> gold-Nsgn	<i>nebo.</i> or.	<i>jo.</i> yes.	<i>mně</i> me-D
<i>to</i> that-Nsg it seemed that way to me there	<i>tam</i> there	<i>přišlo</i> seemed-pastnsg	<i>takový [-é]</i> such-Nsgn	<i>sme [jsme]</i> AUX1pl
<i>s</i> with Pét'a and I were saying that we are	<i>Pét'ou</i> Pét'a-Isg	<i>řikali [říkali]</i> said-pastmpl	<i>že</i> that	<i>sme [jsme]</i> AUX1pl
<i>strašný [strašný]</i> terrible-Nplmanim terribly old. and that. simply.	<i>staroši.</i> old-people-Npl	<i>a</i> and	<i>že.</i> that.	<i>prostě.</i> simply.
<i>jako</i> like like we have such	<i>máme</i> have-nonpast1pl	<i>k</i> to	<i>tomu</i> that-Dsgn	<i>takovej [-ý]</i> such-Asgm
<i>pozorovatelskej [-ý]</i> vicarious-Asgm a vicarious attitude to it yes. how	<i>přístup</i> approach-Asg	<i>jo.</i> yes.	<i>jak</i> like	<i>se</i> REFL-A
<i>chová</i> behaves- nonpast3sg today's golden youth is behaving yes	<i>dnešní</i> today's-Nsgf	<i>zlatá</i> golden-Nsgf	<i>mládež</i> youth-Nsg	<i>jo</i> yes
<i>i když</i> even though even though the age difference is	<i>ten</i> that-Nsgm	<i>rozdíl</i> difference-Nsg	<i>věkovéj [-ý]</i> age-adj-Nsgm	<i>je</i> is-nonpast3sg
<i>vlastně</i> actually actually small	<i>malej [malý]</i> small-Nsgm			



## Abbreviations

1	1st person
2	2nd person
3	3rd person
A	accusative
anim	animate
AUX	auxiliary
C	consonant
CCz	Colloquial Czech
D	dative
f, fem	feminine
G	genitive
I	instrumental
inan	inanimate
L	locative
LCz	Literary Czech
m, masc	masculine
N	nominative
n, neut	neuter
pl	plural
pres	present
REFL	reflexive
sg	singular
V	vocative; vowel
n/s	non-syllabic
PPP	past passive participle
0	zero suffix or ending

## Bibliography

- Bělič, Jaromír. 1972. *Nástin české dialektologie*. Prague: SPN.
- Bermel 1993. "Sémantické rozdíly v tvarech českého lokálu." *Naše řeč* 76, 192-198.
- Čechová, Marie *et al.* 1996. *Čeština - řeč a jazyk*. Prague: ISV.
- Filipec, Josef, *et al.* 1994. *Slovník spisovné češtiny pro školu a veřejnost*. Prague: Academia.
- Grepl, Miroslav *et al.* 1995. *Příruční mluvnice češtiny*. Prague: Lidové noviny.
- Janda, Laura A. 1996. *Back from the brink: a study of how relic forms in languages serve as source material for analogical extension (=LINCOS Studies in Slavic Linguistics 01)*. Munich/Newcastle: LINCOS EUROPA.
- Kopecký, L. *et al.* 1973. *Česko-ruský slovník*. Prague/Moscow: SPN/Sovetskaja ènciklopedija.
- Müllerová, Olga *et al.* 1992. *Mluvená čeština v autentických textech*. Jinočany: H&H.
- Ouředník, Patrik. 1992. *Šmírbuch jazyka českého*. Prague: Ivo Železný.
- Palková, Zdena. 1994. *Fonetika a fonologie češtiny*. Prague: Univerzita Karlova.
- Petr, Jan *et al.* 1986. *Mluvnice češtiny 1, 2, 3*. Prague: Academia.
- Poldauf, Ivan. 1986. *Czech English Dictionary*. Prague: SPN.
- Sgall, Petr and Jiří Hronek. 1992. *Čeština bez příkras*. Prague: H&H.
- Short, David. 1993. "Czech", in *The Slavonic languages*, ed. by Bernard Comrie and Greville G. Corbett. London/New York: Routledge, 455-532.
- Suk, Jaroslav 1993 *Několik slangových slovníků* Prague: Inverze



- Townsend, Charles E. 1990. *A description of spoken Prague Czech*. Columbus: Slavica.
- Townsend, Charles E., and Eric Komar. 2000. *Czech through Russian*. Bloomington, IN: Slavica.